

GAUSSTM

User Guide

Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Aptech Systems, Inc. The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement or nondisclosure agreement. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. The purchaser may make one copy of the software for backup purposes. No part of this manual may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Aptech Systems, Inc.

©Copyright Aptech Systems, Inc. Black Diamond WA 1984-2010
All Rights Reserved Worldwide.

SuperLU. ©Copyright 2003, The Regents of the University of California, through Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (subject to receipt of any required approvals from U.S. Dept. of Energy). All Rights Reserved. See **GAUSS** Software Product License for additional terms and conditions.

TAUCS Version 2.0, November 29, 2001. ©Copyright 2001, 2002, 2003 by Sivan Toledo, Tel-Aviv University, stoledo@tau.ac.il. All Rights Reserved. See **GAUSS** Software License for additional terms and conditions.

Econotron Software, Inc. beta, polygamma, zeta, gammacplx, lngammacplx, erfcplx, erfccplx, psi, gradcp, hesscp Functions: ©Copyright 2009 by Econotron Software, Inc. All Rights Reserved Worldwide.

GAUSS, **GAUSS Engine** and **GAUSS Light** are trademarks of Aptech Systems, Inc.
GEM is a trademark of Digital Research, Inc.
Lotus is a trademark of Lotus Development Corp.
HP LaserJet and HP-GL are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Corp.
PostScript is a trademark of Adobe Systems Inc.
IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation
Hercules is a trademark of Hercules Computer Technology, Inc.
GraphiC is a trademark of Scientific Endeavors Corporation
Tektronix is a trademark of Tektronix, Inc.
Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
Other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Part Number: 007431

Version 11

Documentation Revision: 1032 October 22, 2010

Contents

1 Introduction

1.1	Product Overview	1-1
1.2	Documentation Conventions	1-2

2 Getting Started

2.1	Installation Under UNIX/Linux	2-1
2.2	Installation Under Windows	2-2
2.2.1	Machine Requirements	2-2
2.2.2	Installation from Download	2-2
2.2.3	Installation from CD	2-2

3 Introduction to the GAUSS Graphical User Interface

3.1	Page Organization Concept	3-1
3.2	Command Page	3-2
3.2.1	Menus and Toolbars	3-3
3.2.2	Command Page Toolbar	3-4
3.2.3	Working Directory Toolbar	3-4
3.2.4	Command History Toolbar	3-5
3.2.5	The Run, Debug, and Edit Buttons	3-6
3.3	Layout	3-6
3.3.1	Command History Window	3-7
3.3.2	The Command Input Window	3-8
3.4	Command Line History and Command Line Editing	3-8
3.4.1	Movement	3-8
3.4.2	Error Output Window	3-9
3.5	Source Page: Editing Programs	3-9
3.5.1	Menus and Toolbars	3-9
3.5.2	Layout and Usage	3-10

3.5.3	Find and Replace	3-14
3.5.4	Changing Editor Properties	3-15
3.5.5	Command Input Window	3-16
3.5.6	Error Output Window	3-16
3.6	Data Page	3-16
3.6.1	Menu Bar	3-16
3.6.2	Layout	3-18
3.6.3	Symbol Editor	3-20
3.7	Debug Page	3-20
3.7.1	Menus and Toolbars	3-20
3.7.2	Using Breakpoints	3-22
3.7.3	Setting and Clearing Breakpoints	3-23
3.7.4	Stepping Through a Program	3-23
3.7.5	Viewing and Editing Variables	3-23
3.8	Help Page	3-25
3.8.1	Hot Keys	3-25

4 Navigating the GAUSS Graphical User Interface

4.1	Hot Keys and Shortcuts	4-2
4.2	Navigating Between Pages	4-2
4.3	Switch To Command Page on I/O	4-3
4.4	Viewing Program Output from Other Pages	4-3
4.5	F1 Help	4-4
4.6	CTRL+F1 Source Browsing	4-4

5 Using the Command Line Interface

5.1	Viewing Graphics	5-2
5.2	Command Line History and Command Line Editing	5-2
5.2.1	Movement	5-2
5.2.2	Editing	5-3
5.2.3	History Retrieval	5-3

5.3	Interactive Commands	5-4
5.3.1	quit	5-4
5.3.2	ed	5-5
5.3.3	browse	5-5
5.3.4	config	5-5
5.4	Debugging	5-7
5.4.1	General Functions	5-7
5.4.2	Listing Functions	5-7
5.4.3	Execution Functions	5-7
5.4.4	View Commands	5-9
5.4.5	Breakpoint Commands	5-9
5.5	Using the Source Browser in TGAUSS	5-10
 6 Language Fundamentals		
6.1	Expressions	6-1
6.2	Statements	6-2
6.2.1	Executable Statements	6-3
6.2.2	Nonexecutable Statements	6-3
6.3	Programs	6-4
6.3.1	Main Section	6-4
6.3.2	Secondary Sections	6-5
6.4	Compiler Directives	6-5
6.5	Procedures	6-8
6.6	Data Types	6-9
6.6.1	Constants	6-9
6.6.2	Matrices	6-11
6.6.3	Sparse Matrices	6-18
6.6.4	N-dimensional Arrays	6-19
6.6.5	Strings	6-20
6.6.6	String Arrays	6-24
6.6.7	Character Matrices	6-26
6.6.8	Date and Time Formats	6-27

6.6.9	Special Data Types	6-28
6.7	Operator Precedence	6-30
6.8	Flow Control	6-31
6.8.1	Looping	6-32
6.8.2	Conditional Branching	6-34
6.8.3	Unconditional Branching	6-35
6.9	Functions	6-37
6.10	Rules of Syntax	6-37
6.10.1	Statements	6-37
6.10.2	Case	6-38
6.10.3	Comments	6-38
6.10.4	Extraneous Spaces	6-38
6.10.5	Symbol Names	6-39
6.10.6	Labels	6-39
6.10.7	Assignment Statements	6-39
6.10.8	Function Arguments	6-40
6.10.9	Indexing Matrices	6-40
6.10.10	Arrays of Matrices and Strings	6-41
6.10.11	Arrays of Procedures	6-42

7 Operators

7.1	Element-by-Element Operators	7-1
7.2	Matrix Operators	7-4
7.2.1	Numeric Operators	7-4
7.2.2	Other Matrix Operators	7-8
7.3	Relational Operators	7-9
7.4	Logical Operators	7-13
7.5	Other Operators	7-15
7.6	Using Dot Operators with Constants	7-20
7.7	Operator Precedence	7-22

8 Procedures and Keywords

8.1	Defining a Procedure	8-2
8.1.1	Procedure Declaration	8-3
8.1.2	Local Variable Declarations	8-3
8.1.3	Body of Procedure	8-4
8.1.4	Returning from the Procedure	8-5
8.1.5	End of Procedure Definition	8-5
8.2	Calling a Procedure	8-6
8.3	Keywords	8-7
8.3.1	Defining a Keyword	8-7
8.3.2	Calling a Keyword	8-8
8.4	Passing Procedures to Procedures	8-9
8.5	Indexing Procedures	8-10
8.6	Multiple Returns from Procedures	8-11
8.7	Saving Compiled Procedures	8-13

9 Sparse Matrices

9.1	Defining Sparse Matrices	9-1
9.2	Creating and Using Sparse Matrices	9-2
9.3	Sparse Support in Matrix Functions and Operators	9-3
9.3.1	Return Types for Dyadic Operators	9-5

10 N-Dimensional Arrays

10.1	Bracketed Indexing	10-3
10.2	E×E Conformability	10-5
10.3	Glossary of Terms	10-5

11 Working with Arrays

11.1	Initializing Arrays	11-1
11.1.1	areshape	11-2

11.1.2	aconcat	11-4
11.1.3	aeye	11-6
11.1.4	arrayinit	11-6
11.1.5	arrayalloc	11-7
11.2	Assigning to Arrays	11-8
11.2.1	index operator	11-9
11.2.2	getArray	11-12
11.2.3	getMatrix	11-13
11.2.4	getMatrix4D	11-13
11.2.5	getScalar3D, getScalar4D	11-14
11.2.6	putArray	11-15
11.2.7	setArray	11-16
11.3	Looping with Arrays	11-17
11.3.1	loopnextindex	11-19
11.4	Miscellaneous Array Functions	11-21
11.4.1	atranspose	11-21
11.4.2	amult	11-23
11.4.3	amean, amin, amax	11-25
11.4.4	getDims	11-27
11.4.5	getOrders	11-27
11.4.6	arraytomat	11-28
11.4.7	mattoarray	11-28
11.5	Using Arrays with GAUSS functions	11-28
11.6	A Panel Data Model	11-32
11.7	Appendix	11-35

12 Structures

12.1	Basic Structures	12-1
12.1.1	Structure Definition	12-1
12.1.2	Declaring an Instance	12-2
12.1.3	Initializing an Instance	12-3
12.1.4	Arrays of Structures	12-4

12.1.5	Structure Indexing	12-5
12.1.6	Saving an Instance to the Disk	12-8
12.1.7	Loading an Instance from the Disk	12-9
12.1.8	Passing Structures to Procedures	12-9
12.2	Structure Pointers	12-10
12.2.1	Creating and Assigning Structure Pointers	12-10
12.2.2	Structure Pointer References	12-11
12.2.3	Using Structure Pointers in Procedures	12-13
12.3	Special Structures	12-15
12.3.1	The DS Structure	12-15
12.3.2	The PV Structure	12-16
12.3.3	Miscellaneous PV Procedures	12-20
12.3.4	Control Structures	12-22
12.4	sqpSolvemt	12-23
12.4.1	Input Arguments	12-24
12.4.2	Output Argument	12-27
12.4.3	Example	12-29
12.4.4	The Command File	12-30

13 Run-Time Library Structures

13.1	The PV Parameter Structure	13-1
13.2	Fast Pack Functions	13-6
13.3	The DS Data Structure	13-7

14 Multi-Threaded Programming in GAUSS

14.1	The Functions	14-1
14.2	GAUSS Threading Concepts	14-3
14.3	Coding With Threads	14-4
14.4	Coding Restrictions	14-6

15 Libraries

15.1	Autoloader	15-1
15.1.1	Forward References	15-2
15.1.2	The Autoloader Search Path	15-3
15.2	Global Declaration Files	15-9
15.3	Troubleshooting	15-12
15.3.1	Using .dec Files	15-13

16 Compiler

16.1	Compiling Programs	16-2
16.1.1	Compiling a File	16-2
16.2	Saving the Current Workspace	16-2
16.3	Debugging	16-3

17 File I/O

17.1	ASCII Files	17-3
17.1.1	Matrix Data	17-3
17.1.2	General File I/O	17-6
17.2	Data Sets	17-7
17.2.1	Layout	17-7
17.2.2	Creating Data Sets	17-8
17.2.3	Reading and Writing	17-8
17.2.4	Distinguishing Character and Numeric Data	17-9
17.3	GAUSS Data Archives	17-11
17.3.1	Creating and Writing Variables to GDA's	17-11
17.3.2	Reading Variables from GDA's	17-12
17.3.3	Updating Variables in GDA's	17-13
17.4	Matrix Files	17-13
17.5	File Formats	17-14
17.5.1	Small Matrix v89 (Obsolete)	17-15
17.5.2	Extended Matrix v89 (Obsolete)	17-16

17.5.3	Small String v89 (Obsolete)	17-16
17.5.4	Extended String v89 (Obsolete)	17-17
17.5.5	Small Data Set v89 (Obsolete)	17-17
17.5.6	Extended Data Set v89 (Obsolete)	17-19
17.5.7	Matrix v92 (Obsolete)	17-20
17.5.8	String v92 (Obsolete)	17-20
17.5.9	Data Set v92 (Obsolete)	17-21
17.5.10	Matrix v96	17-22
17.5.11	Data Set v96	17-23
17.5.12	GAUSS Data Archive	17-24
18 Foreign Language Interface		
18.1	Writing FLI Functions	18-2
18.2	Creating Dynamic Libraries	18-3
19 Data Transformations		
19.1	Data Loop Statements	19-2
19.2	Using Other Statements	19-3
19.3	Debugging Data Loops	19-3
19.3.1	Translation Phase	19-3
19.3.2	Compilation Phase	19-3
19.3.3	Execution Phase	19-4
19.4	Reserved Variables	19-4
20 The GAUSS Profiler		
20.1	Using the GAUSS Profiler	20-1
20.1.1	Collection	20-1
20.1.2	Analysis	20-2

21 Publication Quality Graphics

21.1	General Design	21-1
21.2	Using Publication Quality Graphics	21-2
21.2.1	Getting Started	21-2
21.2.2	Graphics Coordinate System	21-6
21.3	Graphic Panels	21-7
21.3.1	Tiled Graphic Panels	21-7
21.3.2	Overlapping Graphic Panels	21-7
21.3.3	Nontransparent Graphic Panels	21-8
21.3.4	Transparent Graphic Panels	21-8
21.3.5	Using Graphic Panel Functions	21-8
21.3.6	Inch Units in Graphic Panels	21-10
21.3.7	Saving Graphic Panel Configurations	21-10
21.4	Graphics Text Elements	21-10
21.4.1	Selecting Fonts	21-11
21.4.2	Greek and Mathematical Symbols	21-12
21.5	Colors	21-14
21.6	Global Control Variables	21-14

22 Graphics Editor

22.1	Introduction to the Graphics Editor	22-1
22.1.1	Overview	22-1
22.2	Graphics Editor Workspace	22-2
22.2.1	Toolbar	22-2
22.2.2	Status Bar	22-3
22.2.3	File menu commands	22-4
22.2.4	Edit menu commands	22-5
22.2.5	View menu commands	22-5
22.2.6	Draw menu commands	22-6
22.2.7	Export menu commands	22-7
22.2.8	Help menu commands	22-7

22.2.9	Object Action Context Menu	22-7
22.2.10	Page Context Menu	22-8
22.2.11	Setting the Page/View Properties	22-9
22.2.12	Setting the Pen/Fill Properties	22-10
22.2.13	Graphical Objects	22-11
22.2.14	Modifying the Graphical Objects	22-14
22.3	File Management	22-16
22.3.1	Exporting Files	22-16

23 Time and Date

23.1	Time and Date Formats	23-2
23.2	Time and Date Functions	23-4
23.2.1	Timed Iterations	23-6

24 ATOG

24.1	Command Summary	24-1
24.2	Commands	24-3
24.3	Examples	24-12
24.4	Error Messages	24-15

25 Error Messages

26 Maximizing Performance

26.1	Library System	26-1
26.2	Loops	26-2
26.3	Memory Usage	26-3
26.3.1	Hard Disk Maintenance	26-4
26.3.2	CPU Cache	26-4

A Fonts

A.1	Simplex	A-2
A.2	Simgrma	A-3
A.3	Microb	A-4
A.4	Complex	A-5

B Reserved Words Appendix

C Singularity Tolerance Appendix

C.1	Reading and Setting the Tolerance	C-2
C.2	Determining Singularity	C-2

27 Command Reference Introduction

27.1	Documentation Conventions	27-2
27.2	Command Components	27-3
27.3	Using This Manual	27-4
27.4	Global Control Variables	27-5
27.4.1	Changing the Default Values	27-5
27.4.2	The Procedure gausset	27-6

28 Commands by Category

28.1	Mathematical Functions	28-1
28.2	Finance Functions	28-23
28.3	Matrix Manipulation	28-24
28.4	Sparse Matrix Handling	28-29
28.5	N-Dimensional Array Handling	28-30
28.6	Structures	28-32
28.7	Data Handling (I/O)	28-33
28.8	Compiler Control	28-42
28.9	Multi-Threading	28-43

28.10 Program Control	28-44
28.11 OS Functions and File Management	28-49
28.12 Workspace Management	28-50
28.13 Error Handling and Debugging	28-50
28.14 String Handling	28-51
28.15 Time and Date Functions	28-53
28.16 Console I/O	28-55
28.17 Output Functions	28-56
28.18 Graphics	28-57

29 Command Reference

D Obsolete Commands

E Colors

Index

List of Figures

3.1 Command Page	3-2
3.2 Command Page Toolbar	3-4
3.3 Working Directory Toolbar	3-5
3.4 Command History Toolbar	3-5
3.5 Run, Debug, and Edit Buttons	3-6
3.6 Command Page Widgets	3-7
3.7 Command History Window	3-8
3.8 Source Page	3-11
3.9 Programming Editor	3-11
3.10 Find and Replace	3-14
3.11 Find and Replace Regular Expression	3-15
3.12 Data Page	3-17
3.13 Data Page Toolbar	3-18
3.14 The Struct Editor	3-19
3.15 Debug Toolbar	3-21
3.16 Debug Window	3-22
3.17 Watch Window	3-24
3.18 Help Page	3-26
12.1 Structure tree for e1	12-7
22.1 Graphics Editor Workspace	22-2
22.2 Graphics Editor Toolbar	22-3
22.3 Graphics Editor Status Bar	22-3

Introduction 1

1.1 Product Overview

GAUSSTM is a complete analysis environment suitable for performing quick calculations, complex analysis of millions of data points, or anything in between. Whether you are new to computerized analysis or a seasoned programmer, the **GAUSS** family of products combine to offer you an easy to learn environment that is powerful and versatile enough for virtually any numerical task.

Since its introduction in 1984, **GAUSS** has been the standard for serious number crunching and complex modeling of large-scale data. Worldwide acceptance and use in government, industry, and the academic community is a firm testament to its power and versatility.

The **GAUSS** System can be described several ways: It is an exceptionally efficient number cruncher, a comprehensive programming language, and an interactive analysis environment. **GAUSS** may be the only numerical tool you will ever need.

1.2 Documentation Conventions

The following table describes how text formatting is used to identify **GAUSS** programming elements:

Text Style	Use	Example
regular text	narrative	“... text formatting is used ...”
bold text	emphasis	“... not supported under UNIX. ”
<i>italic text</i>	variables	“... If <i>vnames</i> is a string or has fewer elements than <i>x</i> has columns, it will be ...”
monospace	code example	<pre>if scalerr(cm); cm = inv(x); endif;</pre>
monospace	filename, path, etc.	“...is located in the <code>examples</code> subdirectory...”
monospace bold	reference to a GAUSS command or other programming element within a narrative paragraph	“...as explained under create... ”
SMALL CAPS	reference to section of the manual	“...see OPERATOR PRECEDENCE, Section 7.7 ...”

Getting Started 2

2.1 Installation Under UNIX/Linux

1. Make a directory to install **GAUSS** in.
2. **cd** to that directory.
3. Gunzip the `.gz` file if there is one.
4. Untar the `.tar` file.
5. Run the executable script `ginstall`.
6. Put the installation directory in the executable path.
7. Put the installation directory in the shared library search path.
8. Install the license. (To receive a license and license installation instructions, email `license@aptech.com`.)

For last-minute information, see `README.term`.

2.2 Installation Under Windows

2.2.1 Machine Requirements

- A Pentium or AMD computer or equivalent.
- Operating System and Memory (RAM) requirements:
 - Windows XP, 256 MB minimum, 512 MB recommended.
 - Windows Vista 32-bit, 512 MB minimum, 1 GB recommended.
 - Windows Vista 64-bit, 1 GB minimum, 2 GB or more recommended.
 - Windows 7 32-bit, 1 GB minimum, 2 GB or more recommended.
 - Windows 7 64-bit, 2 GB minimum, 3 GB or more recommended.
- Minimum of 100 MB free hard disk space, more may be needed depending on the size of matrices and the complexity of the program.
- Monthly defragmenting is recommended.

2.2.2 Installation from Download

For download instructions, email info@aptech.com.

2.2.3 Installation from CD

Insert the **GAUSS** compact disc into the CD-ROM drive, and setup should start automatically. If setup does not start automatically, click Start, then click Run. Type `D:\setup.exe` in the dialog box (where D is the drive letter of the CD-ROM drive).

You can use this procedure for the initial installation of **GAUSS**, and for additions or modifications to **GAUSS** components.

To receive a license and license installation instructions, email license@aptech.com.

Introduction to the GAUSS Graphical User Interface

3

3.1 Page Organization Concept

The **GAUSS** graphical user interface is organized into separate “pages.” Pages are separate, customizable, main windows with their own set of widgets. Each page is designed to facilitate the performance of one of the common tasks performed in **GAUSS**: entering commands interactively, editing a program, examining data, debugging a program, and accessing the help system. Each page is a tab on the main application, allowing you to instantly access a window custom configured for the task you wish to perform. The **GAUSS** graphical user interface is composed of five different pages.

Command Page	For executing interactive commands.
Source Page	For editing program files.
Data Page	For examining and editing GAUSS matrices and other data.
Debug Page	For interactively debugging your programs.
Help Page	For accessing the GAUSS HTML help system.

Each page may be undocked and from the main application and redocked by toggling the Dock button on the right side of the status bar. Navigation between undocked pages may be accomplished with ALT+TAB and ALT+SHIFT+TAB. To navigate between docked pages, use CTRL+TAB to cycle forward and CTRL+SHIFT+TAB to cycle backwards between pages.

Each page has its own toolbars and menus. The menus and toolbars facilitate intuitive navigation through the GUI as well as performing desired functions. For example, clicking the **New** toolbar from any page in the GUI will bring the Source Page to the top of the window stack with a new file opened ready for editing. More details on navigating the GUI are in Section 4, NAVIGATING THE GAUSS GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE.

3.2 Command Page

The Command Page is for entering interactive commands to GAUSS.

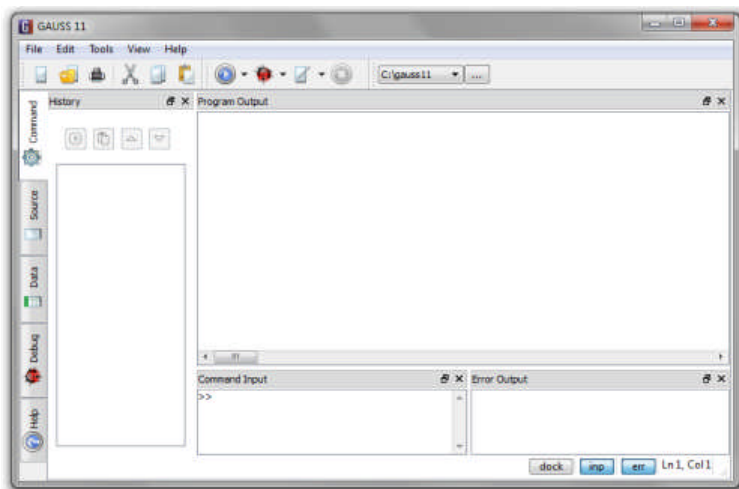


Figure 3.1: Command Page

3.2.1 Menus and Toolbars

Command Page

File Menu	New	Creates a new, untitled file in a programming editor on the Source Page.
	Open	Opens an existing file in a programming editor on the Source Page.
	Print	Prints selected text.
	Print Setup	Specifies the printer to use and other options such as paper tray and page orientation.
	Recent Files	Holds a selectable dropdown list of recently edited files.
	Exit	Exits a GAUSS session.
Edit Menu	Undo	Restores your last unsaved change.
	Redo	Re-inserts changes removed with undo.
	Cut	Removes selected text and copies it to the clipboard.
	Copy	Copies selected text to the clipboard.
	Paste	Copies the clipboard contents to the cursor position.
Tools Menu	Preferences	Allows you to configure the GAUSS user environment.
	Change Font	Allows you to specify a new font. Aptech recommends using a monospaced font such as Courier.
	Change Working Directory	Allows you to browse for a new working directory.
	Clear Working Directory History	Deletes the contents of your working directory history.
	Recent Working Directories	Contains a dropdown list of your most recent working directories.
View Menu	The View menu lets you toggle on or off the windows on the current page.	
Help Menu	Goto Help	Takes you to the Help Page.
	About GAUSS	Provides information regarding your version of GAUSS .

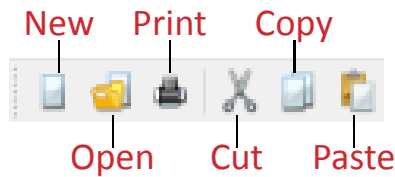


Figure 3.2: Command Page Toolbar

3.2.2 Command Page Toolbar

New	Opens a new, untitled document in a programming editor on the Source Page and brings you to the Source Page.
Open	Opens an existing file for editing.
Cut	Removes selected text and places it on the clipboard.
Copy	Copies selected text to the clipboard.
Paste	Copies the clipboard contents to the cursor position.
Print	Prints selected text.
Run	Runs the file at the top of the Action List.
Debug	Debugs the file at the top of the Action List.
Edit	Opens the file at the top of the Action List.
Stop Program	Stops a running GAUSS program.

3.2.3 Working Directory Toolbar

The Working Directory Toolbar contains a dropdown list that shows your current working directory and a history of recent directories. The Change Working Directory button allows you to browse for and select a new working directory.

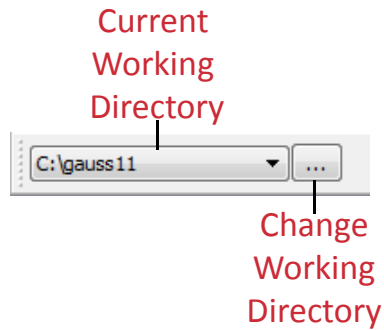


Figure 3.3: Working Directory Toolbar

3.2.4 Command History Toolbar



Figure 3.4: Command History Toolbar

Run	Executes the highlighted command from the command history.
Paste	Pastes the highlighted command to the Command Input Window for further editing.
Search Previous	Searches the Command Output Window for previous executions of a command and its output.
Search Next	Searches the Command Output Window for the next execution of a command and its output.

3.2.5 The Run, Debug, and Edit Buttons

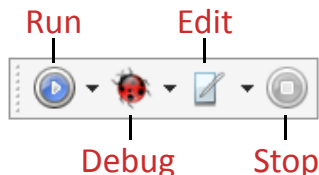


Figure 3.5: Run, Debug, and Edit Buttons

Immediately to the right of the Run, Debug, and Edit buttons is a downward pointing triangle. Clicking on this triangle reveals the Action List. The Action List is a selectable drop down list of your most recently acted upon files. The Run, Debug, and Edit buttons share the same Action List. You may add a file to the Action List by running it from the command line or while editing a file, click on the drop down menu from Run, Debug, or Edit, and select **Current File**. Clicking on the Run button will run the file on the top of the Action List. Placing your mouse over the Run Button produces a tooltip indicating which file will be run.

To run one of the other files in the list, access the Action List by clicking on the triangle next to the Run button and select the name of the file you wish to run. The Debug and Edit buttons work in the same manner.

3.3 Layout

The Command Page contains four widgets: the Program Output Window, the Command History Window, the Command Input Window, and the Error Output Window.

The Command Output Window shows the output from interactive commands and programs. It is also the location for user input requested by the **GAUSS** functions **keyw** and **cons**.

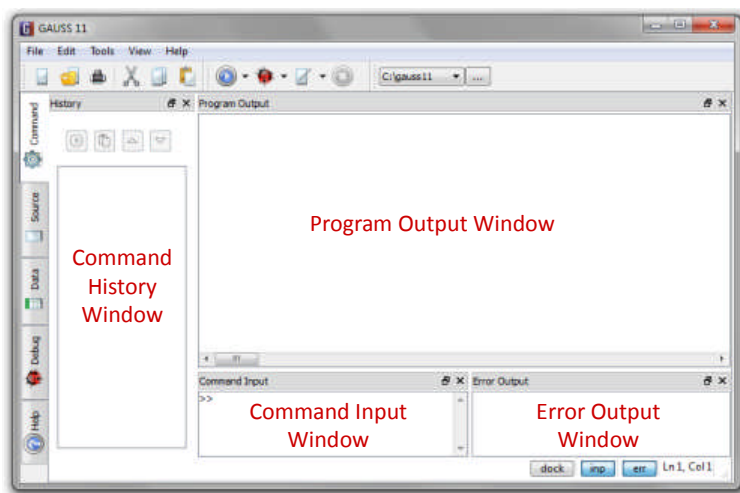


Figure 3.6: Command Page Widgets

3.3.1 Command History Window

The Command History Window contains a list of recently executed commands. Commands in the command history can be executed by double clicking them or highlighting a command and clicking the Run button from the Command History toolbar.

Commands can be sent to the Command Input Window for further editing before executing by highlighting a command and clicking the Paste button. The Search Next and Search Previous buttons will search the Command Output Window forward or backwards for previous executions of that command so that you may inspect its output.

To remove commands from the command history, right-click over a command and select **Delete** to remove only the highlighted command or **Delete All** to remove the entire contents of the command history.

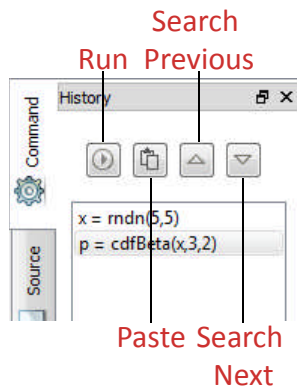


Figure 3.7: Command History Window

3.3.2 The Command Input Window

The Command Input Window is where you enter interactive commands in **GAUSS**. The Command Input Window provides a command history with fully featured command line editing.

3.4 Command Line History and Command Line Editing

When you run a command at the **GAUSS** prompt, it is added to your command line history. The last 1,000 commands executed at the **GAUSS** command line are stored. The following keystrokes are supported for movement and editing at the command line and for retrieving the command line history:

3.4.1 Movement

Left Arrow or
CTRL+B

Moves cursor left one character.

Right Arrow or CTRL+F	Moves cursor right one character.
HOME	Moves cursor to beginning of line.
END or CTRL+E	Moves cursor to end of line.
ALT+Left Arrow or CTRL+Left Arrow	Moves cursor left one word.
ALT+Right Arrow or CTRL+Right Arrow	Moves cursor right one word.
Up Arrow	Search up through command history.
Down Arrow	Search down through command history.

3.4.2 Error Output Window

The Error Output Window shows errors messages from program runs or interactive commands. It may be viewed from any page by clicking the Error Output button on the right side of the status bar.

3.5 Source Page: Editing Programs

The Source Page is for creating and editing programs and procedures.

3.5.1 Menus and Toolbars

Section 3.2 provides details of the main menus and toolbars. The Source Page contains the following additional menu options.

File Menu

Save	Saves the active file.
Save As	Saves the active file with a new or different file or path name.
Close	Closes the selected file.
Close All	Closes all open files.

Window Menu

Split Horizontally	Tiles any open programming editors horizontally.
Split Vertically	Tiles any open programming editors vertically.
Remove Split	Removes any editor window tiling.
Close	Closes the selected file.
Close All	Closes all open files.

3.5.2 Layout and Usage

The Source Page contains four separate window components.

Programming Editor

Individual programming editors are opened in the editor docking area. The editor docking area allows tabbing of multiple open files, with the option to tile editors with a horizontal or vertical split. Select **Window->Split Horizontally** or **Window->Split Vertically** to tile open editor windows.

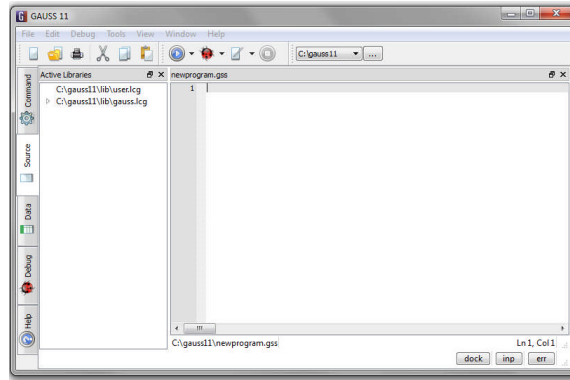


Figure 3.8: Source Page

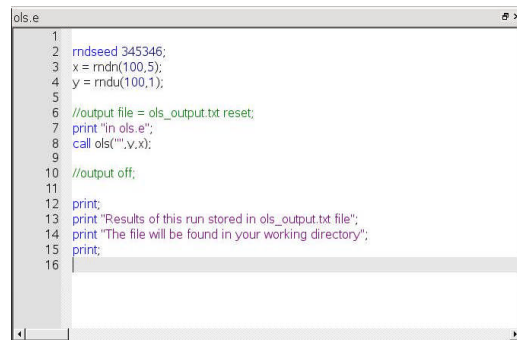


Figure 3.9: Programming Editor

Individual editor windows can be pulled out of the Source Page by grabbing their banner and dragging them to the desired location.

Programming editor features:

1. Syntax highlighting: The **GAUSS** programming editor will provide syntax highlighting for **GAUSS**, C/C++, Java, Fortran, R and many other languages.
2. Autocompletion: Autocompletion is available in the **GAUSS** programming editor for **GAUSS** functions.

Using autocomplete: if the characters you enter match items in the autocomplete list, a dropdown box will appear containing those functions. To navigate the dropdown list, press the down arrow or continue typing until only one selection remains. Once the desired command is highlighted, press the ENTER key to insert the remainder of the word.

3. Tooltips: After a **GAUSS** command and an opening parenthesis has been entered, a tooltip will appear with the argument list for the function.
4. Code folding: At the start of code blocks (e.g., procedure definitions, **do** and **for** loops, and **if** statements), the left margin of the programming editor will contain a +. Clicking the + will hide the block of code from view and place a horizontal line across the editor indicating folded code and changing the + to a -. Clicking on the - will reveal the hidden code.
5. Autoindenting: The **GAUSS** programming editor provides automatic code indenting and deindenting. Autoindenting not only simplifies the process of writing code but also encourages the creation of readable code.

Programming Editor Hot Keys

CTRL+A	Select All.
CTRL+C	Copy.
CTRL+D	Debug current file.
CTRL+F	Find and replace.
CTRL+G	Go to Line.
CTRL+L	Delete line.
CTRL+N	Open new file.
CTRL+O	Open existing file.
CTRL+P	Print file.
CTRL+Q	Used for block commenting.
CTRL+R	Run current file.
CTRL+S	Save current file.
CTRL+T	Switches current line with the line above.
CTRL+V	Paste.
CTRL+W	Closes the current file.
CTRL+Z	Undo.
CTRL+Y	Redo.
CTRL+~	Cycles through open editor windows.

3.5.3 Find and Replace

From the Edit Menu, selecting **Find and Replace** or pressing CTRL+F will bring up the find and replace widget at the bottom of your open programming editor. If a word is highlighted when you access find and replace, it will automatically be present in the find box when the find and replace widget is opened. Press the ENTER key or > to search forward. Press the < key to search backwards. To close the find and replace widget, press ESC or click the x button on the left.

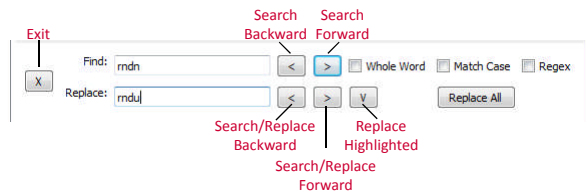


Figure 3.10: Find and Replace

The Replace Box has three buttons: > means replace the highlighted expression and search forwards, < means replace the highlighted expression and search backwards and V means replace the highlighted text and do not change the cursor position.

Regular Expressions

Find and Replace in **GAUSS** supports regular expression searching. Regular expression searching gives users tremendous power allowing quick and precise search and replace throughout an entire file. For example, let us start with a file containing the following commands:

```
r = 100;  
c = 50;  
  
x = rndn(r,c);  
y = rndu(r,c);  
  
z = x.*rndn(r,c);
```

Regular expressions allow you to perform very specific find and replace commands. Suppose that we want to find all usages of **rndu** and **rndn** and replace them with **rndKMU**.

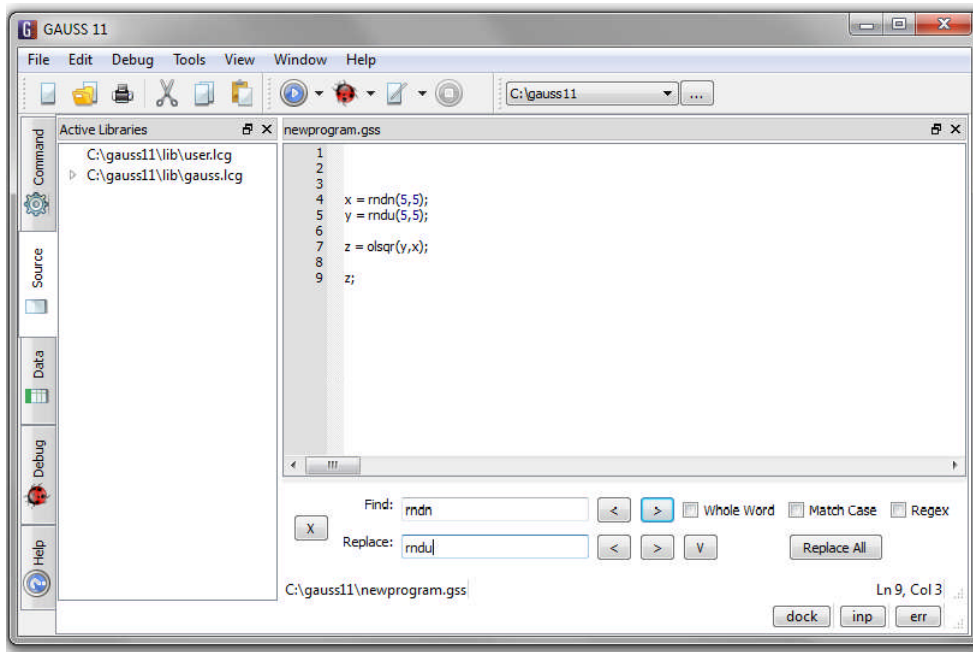


Figure 3.11: Find and Replace Regular Expression

To open **Find and Replace**, we enter CTRL+F in our open text editor. In the Find and Replace widget, select the check box next to **Regex** to enable regular expression searching. One of the most simple regular expression options is to add a **'.'**. The **'.'** means any character. So, if we search for **"rnd."** that will find any string that contains **rnd** followed by any character, such as **rnda**, **rndb**, **rndc**, **rndn**, **rndu**, etc. Now enter **"rndKMU"** in the replace box and click **Replace All**. Now all instances of **rndu** and **rndn** should be replaced with **rndKMU**.

3.5.4 Changing Editor Properties

Programming editor preferences can be accessed by selecting: **Tools->Preferences** from the menu bar. From the Preferences window, select **Source** from the tree on the left. Here you can

customize the programming editor's behavior.

3.5.5 Command Input Window

The Command Input Window can be accessed by toggling the Input button on the right side of the status bar. For details regarding the features and usage of the Command Input Window, see Section [3.3.2](#).

3.5.6 Error Output Window

The Error Output Window can be accessed by toggling the Error Output button on the right side of the status bar. For details regarding the features and usage of the Error Output Window, see Section [3.4.2](#).

3.6 Data Page

Section [3.2.1](#) provides details of the main menus and toolbars. The Data Page contains the following changes to the toolbar and menu options.

3.6.1 Menu Bar

Symbol Editor Menu

Edit Symbol	Opens an active symbol from your current GAUSS workspace in a symbol editor.
Save Symbol	Saves changes to the symbol in the active symbol editor.
Reload Symbol	Reloads a symbol that is out-of-sync with the GAUSS symbol table. Note: This only applies if auto-reload mode is turned off.

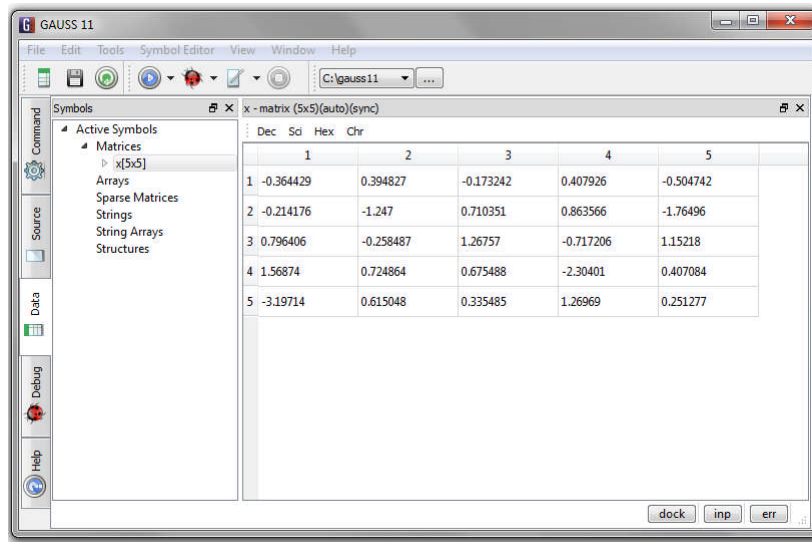


Figure 3.12: Data Page

- Toggle** Turns on/off autoreload for the active symbol editor.
- Auto-reload**
- Preferences** Brings up preference dialog for changing the settings of open symbol editors.
- Window Menu**
- Split** Tiles open symbol editors horizontally.
- Horizontally**
- Split** Tiles open symbol editors vertically.
- Vertically**

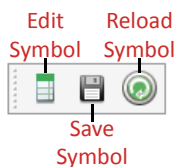


Figure 3.13: Data Page Toolbar

Toolbar

New	Opens an active symbol from your current GAUSS workspace in a symbol editor.
Save	Saves changes to the symbol in the active symbol editor.
Reload	Reloads an out-of-sync symbol editor. Note: This applies only if autoreload is disabled.

3.6.2 Layout

The Data Page has two main widgets: the symbol tree and the source editor docking area. The Command Input and Error Windows are also accessible from the toggle buttons on the right side of the status bar.

The Symbol Tree window lists all of your active symbols, organized by type. To view your active symbols, click on the node expander or right click and select **Symbol View** from the context menu. Hovering over a symbol in the Symbol Tree will produce a tooltip with a preview of the symbol's contents. To view the entire contents of a symbol, double-click the symbol or right-click the symbol and select **Edit**. The symbol will now appear in a symbol editor (see Section 3.6.3, Symbol Editor).

Double-clicking an already open symbol will bring that symbol to the top of the stack of open symbol editors. If you would like to open a second copy of a symbol, right-click on the symbol in the symbol tree and select **Edit Another Copy**. **GAUSS** allows you to open more than one copy of each symbol so that you can examine different portions of a large matrix at the same time.

Special Case: Structures

To view a structure in the **GAUSS** Symbol Editor, click the + next to the Structures node on the Symbol Tree. From here you will see a full list of all structures in your current **GAUSS** workspace. Clicking the + next to an individual structure will reveal all members of a structure.

To view the contents of any member of a **GAUSS** structure, first open the structure in a Struct Viewer, by either double-clicking or right-clicking and selecting **Edit** over the name of the structure in the Symbol Tree. Once open in the Struct Viewer, individual members of the structure can be accessed for viewing and editing from the Struct Tree.

The Struct Editor

When opened from the Symbol Tree, structures will be loaded into a special Struct Editor. The Struct Editor is composed of a Struct Tree Widget and a Struct Member Editor. The Struct Tree Widget displays the structure being edited and its members names, data types and dimensions. The Struct Member editor displays the contents of individual struct members. The Struct Editor is displayed in the Source Editor docking area like all other Source Editors.

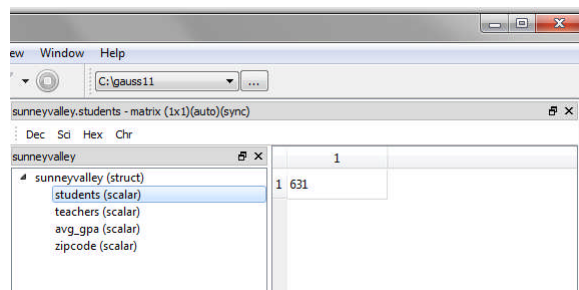


Figure 3.14: The Struct Editor

Individual structure members can be opened for editing or viewing from the Struct Tree Widget in the same manner as other data types, such as matrices, are opened from the Symbol Tree. Structure members will be opened in a Symbol Editor to the right of the Struct Tree Widget.

3.6.3 Symbol Editor

Symbol editors are like spreadsheets that allow viewing and editing data in your workspace. Data may be viewed in decimal, scientific, hexadecimal, or character representation. Double-clicking in a cell allows you to change its contents. Navigation throughout the cells can be accomplished with the arrow keys, tab, and the mouse.

To highlight multiple cells, click on the corresponding row or column header. To highlight the entire contents of a symbol editor, click in the empty header box that connects the first row header to the first column header.

Autoreload

By default, open symbol editors will automatically update when the symbol has been changed programmatically. This behavior is referred to as autoreload. A symbol editor in autoreload mode will show (auto) on its header. The header will also display (sync), indicating that the symbol editor's contents are synchronized with the current value of the symbol in the **GAUSS** symbol table.

If you would like the contents of a particular symbol editor to stay the same even if the value of the symbol is changed by running a program or an interactive command, you may disable autoreload for that symbol. If the value of a symbol with autoreload disabled is changed in the **GAUSS** symbol table, the symbol editor will display the message `out-of-sync`. This indicates that the values in the symbol editor are not current.

3.7 Debug Page

3.7.1 Menus and Toolbars

Go	Runs the program to the next breakpoint.
Stop	Terminates a debugging session.
Toggle	Sets/Clears a breakpoint at the cursor.

Breakpoint

Clear Clears all breakpoints in a file.

Breakpoints

Set Watch Opens a watch variable in a symbol editor.

Step Into Runs the next executable line of code in the application and steps into procedures.

Step Over Runs the next executable line of code, but does not step into procedures.

Step Out Runs the remainder of the current procedure and stops at the next line in the calling procedure.

Run to Cursor Runs the program until it reaches the cursor position.

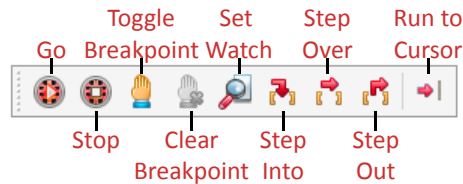


Figure 3.15: Debug Toolbar

Components and Usage

The Debug Page is composed of two windows, the Breakpoint List and the Debug Window. The Debug Window is a programming editor window specifically configured for debugging programs.

The Debug Window indicates which line it is on by the >>> located in the left margin. This is also the location where breakpoints are added. To add a breakpoint, click in the left margin of the Debug Window on the line you wish to add the breakpoint. Clicking an active breakpoint will remove it.

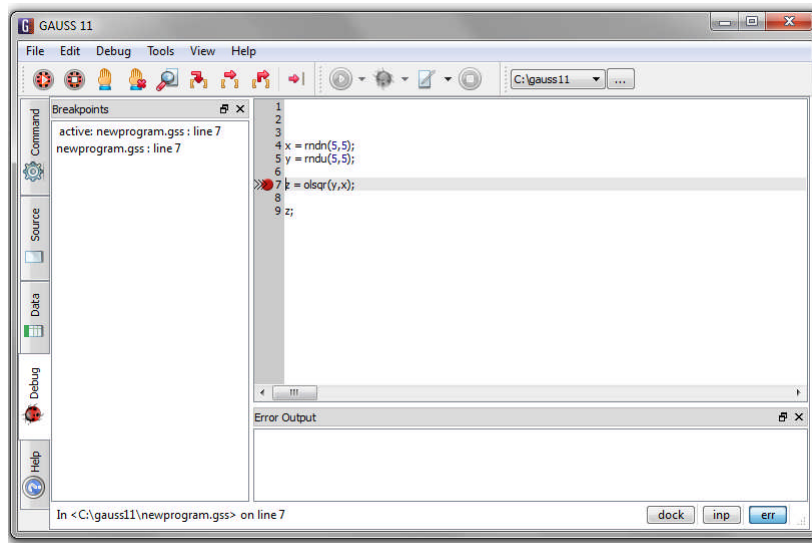


Figure 3.16: Debug Window

Starting and Stopping the Debugger

You can start debugging of a file you are in by pressing CTRL+D. Click the Debug button to debug the file in the top of the Action List. Placing your mouse over the Debug button will reveal a tooltip with the name of this file, or click the downward pointing triangle next to the debug button and select a file from the list.

When the debugger is started, it will highlight the first line of code to be run. Any breakpoints are shown in the left margin of the window. You can stop debugging at any time by clicking the Stop button on the debug toolbar.

3.7.2 Using Breakpoints

Breakpoints stop code execution where you have inserted them. Breakpoints are normally set prior to running the debugger, but can also be set or cleared during debugging by clicking the Set/Clear Breakpoint command on the Debug menu.

3.7.3 Setting and Clearing Breakpoints

To set breakpoints in any part of the file not currently being executed, just click in the left margin of the line on which you would like the breakpoint. Alternatively, you can highlight a line then click Toggle Breakpoint.

To clear a breakpoint in the file, click on the breakpoint you would like to remove or click a line of code that has a breakpoint set and then click Set/Clear Breakpoint. You can clear all breakpoints from the active file by clicking Clear All Breakpoints.

3.7.4 Stepping Through a Program

GAUSS's debugger includes the ability to step into, step out of, and step over code during debugging.

Use Step Into to execute the line of code currently highlighted by the debugger.

Use Step Out to execute to the end of the current function without pause and return to the calling function.

Use Step Over to execute the line of code currently highlighted by the debugger without entering the functions that are called.

3.7.5 Viewing and Editing Variables

GAUSS allows you to view and edit the values of variables during debugging.

Viewing Variable Values During Debugging

Once the debugger is started, the editor window uses floatover variable windows for viewing variable data. Floatover variable windows give a quick view of the value a variable currently holds by simply moving your mouse over the variable name in the edit window.

The floatover variable window is only intended to give a quick view of the data, so it may not show all data held by the variable. If you need to view more data, click on the variable name and type CTRL+E or click the Set Watch Variable and enter the variable name.

Editing Variable Values During Debugging

The debugger integrates the Matrix Editor to edit values of loaded variables, or to use as a watch window to view the changing values of variables as you step through a program.

To edit a variable value, highlight the variable in the edit window, or the Command Input Window and then open the Matrix Editor. You can use the menu or toolbar to start the Matrix Editor.

Making a Watch Window

You can make the Matrix Editor a Watch Window, allowing you to watch the changing value of a variable as the lines of the program are executed. You can activate the Watch Window by clicking Set Watch on the Debug toolbar or by highlighting a variable name in the Debugger Window and pressing CTRL+W.

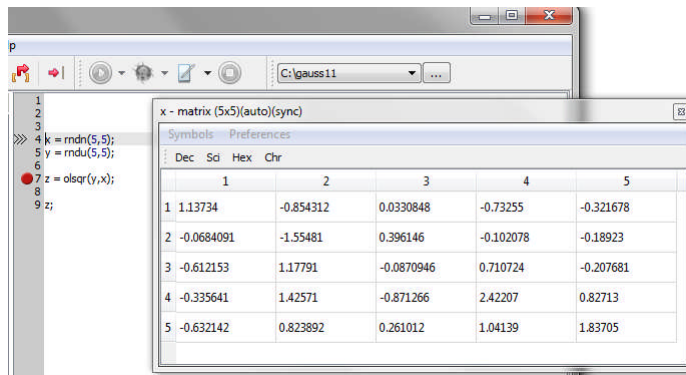


Figure 3.17: Watch Window

You use a Watch Window to see how variables change in value during debugging. Watch variables can be specified prior to running the debugger or during a debugging session.

The debugger searches for a watch variable using the following order:

1. A local variable within a currently active procedure.
2. A global variable.

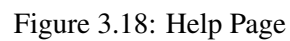
A watch variable can be the name of a matrix, a scalar, a string array, or a string. For a matrix or a string array, the first element is displayed. If a matrix element is clicked, the Matrix Editor is loaded with the matrix. The matrix elements can be changed during the debugging session.

3.8 Help Page

The Help Page gives you access to the entire **GAUSS** help system in HTML format. The table of contents tree is on the left. Click the + symbol to expand a particular section of the contents and double-click on the title to view the page. As on the other pages, the Command Input Window and the Error Window are available via toggle buttons on the status bar. It can be helpful to enter an interactive command and/or view error output while simultaneously viewing the relevant documentation.

3.8.1 Hot Keys

F1	Opens the Command Reference section for the highlighted command.
CTRL+F1	Opens a programming editor with the function definition of a highlighted procedure.



Navigating the GAUSS Graphical User Interface 4

Navigation of the **GAUSS** Graphical User Interface is designed to naturally follow your actions. For example, if the action you would like to perform is debugging the file that you are editing, you can either enter CTRL+D to debug or select the file from the Debug Toolbar Button's drop down Action List. Both of these options will begin your debugging session and take you to the Debug Page. Regardless of the method you choose to initiate the action, debugging in this case, the navigation is done for you.

The same automatic and intuitive navigation is enabled for many common **GAUSS** actions, such as opening a new or existing file for editing or using the F1 help.

Since **GAUSS** program output can be viewed in many ways such as symbol editors on the Data Page or graphic files, running a program or executing a command does not automatically navigate to the Command Page. However, if the Program Output Window from the Command Page is your modality of choice, the option to automatically navigate to the Command Page can be selected as an option under **Tools->Preferences**.

4.1 Hot Keys and Shortcuts

F5	Run file at top of Action List.
F6	Debug file at top of Action List. Inside a debug session, F6 will cause the debugger to run to the next breakpoint, or the end of the file if no breakpoint is set.
F7	Edit file at top of Action List.
F8	Step in (During a debug session).
F9	Step over (During a debug session).
F10	Step out (During a debug session).

The Control Keys operate on a file that is being edited or is open in a Programming Editor and has focus. This file is referred to as the Active File.

CTRL+R	Run the Active File.
CTRL+D	Debug the Active File.

4.2 Navigating Between Pages

CTRL+1	Brings up the Command Page.
CTRL+2	Brings up the Source Page.
CTRL+3	Brings up the Data Page.
CTRL+4	Brings up the Debug Page.

CTRL+5	Brings up the Help Page.
CTRL+TAB	Brings up the next page. For example, CTRL+TAB from the Command Page will bring up the Source Page. CTRL+TAB from the Help Page will wrap and bring up the Command Page.
ALT+TAB	Cycles between any pages that are undocked as well as other open programs.
WINDOW+TAB	Windows only: Cycles between any pages that are undocked as well as other open programs.
Mouse Scroll Wheel	When floating over any set of tabs, the mouse scroll wheel will cycle through the open tabs. This will work for programming editor tabs, symbol editor tabs, and the main page tabs on the left of the main application.

4.3 Switch To Command Page on I/O

Under the **Tools->Preferences->Command** is a check box entitled **Switch to Command Page on I/O**. Selecting this option will bring you to the command page if any program output is printed to the Program Output Window, or if any input is requested by **GAUSS** functions **key**, **keyw** or **cons**.

4.4 Viewing Program Output from Other Pages

The Program Output Window may be pulled out of the Command Page by selecting the Program Output banner and dragging it. The Program Output Window may then be placed and resized. The Program Output Window will remain in place and on the top of the window stack, allowing you to navigate freely between any other pages while continuing to observe the program output.

4.5 F1 Help

If your cursor is on the name of a **GAUSS** command in an editor, you can press F1 and it will take you to the Command Reference listing for that command. Inside the Help system, highlight command names by double-clicking them to enable F1 help navigation.

4.6 CTRL+F1 Source Browsing

For procedures that reside in a **GAUSS** Library (.lcg file), you can browse to the procedure definition and to the initiation of any global variables with CTRL+F1. Like F1 help, set your cursor on the procedure or global variable name and enter CTRL+F1. If it resides in an active library, the source file will be immediately opened in a Programming Editor.

To learn more about creating a User Library for your procedures, see Chapter [15](#).

Using the Command Line Interface 5

TGAUSS is the command line version of **GAUSS**. The executable file, `tgauss` is located in the **GAUSS** installation directory.

The format for using TGAUSS is:

tgauss *flag(s) program program...*

- b** Execute file in batch mode and then exit. You can execute multiple files by separating file names with spaces.
- l logfile** Set the name of the batch mode log file when using the **-b** argument. The default is `tmp/gauss.log###`, where `###` is the process ID.
- e expression** Execute a **GAUSS** expression. This command is not logged when **GAUSS** is in batch mode.
- o** Suppress the sign-on banner (output only).
- T** Turn the dataloop translator on.
- t** Turn the dataloop translator off.

5.1 Viewing Graphics

GAUSS generates .tkf files for graphical output. The default output for graphics is `graphic.tkf`. On Windows, you can use `vwv.exe` to view the graphics file; on UNIX/Linux/Mac, you can use `vwvmp`. Two functions are available to convert .tkf files to PostScript for printing and viewing with external viewers: the **tkf2ps** function will convert .tkf files to PostScript (.ps) files, and the **tkf2eps** function will convert .tkf files to encapsulated PostScript (.eps) files. For example, to convert the file `graphic.tkf` to a postscript file named `graphic.ps` use:

```
ret = tkf2ps('filename.tkf', 'filename.ps')
```

If the function is successful it returns 0.

5.2 Command Line History and Command Line Editing

When you run a command at the TGAUSS prompt, it is added to your command line history, which is stored in a file called `.gauss_prompt_history` in your `$(HOME)` directory on UNIX/Linux or in your `$(HOMEDRIVE)\$(HOMEPATH)` directory on Windows. A separate history for commands entered in the command line debugger is stored in a file called `.gauss_debug_prompt_history` in the same directory. By default, the last 500 commands executed at the TGAUSS and debugger command lines are stored in these files. You can change this number by changing `prompt_hist_num` in your `gauss.cfg` file. The following keystrokes are supported for movement and editing at the command line and for retrieving the command line history:

5.2.1 Movement

Left Arrow or CTRL+B	Moves cursor left one character
Right Arrow or CTRL+F	Moves cursor right one character

HOME or CTRL+A	Moves cursor to beginning of line
END or CTRL+E	Moves cursor to end of line
ALT+Left Arrow or CTRL+Left Arrow	Moves cursor left one word
ALT+Right Arrow or CTRL+Right Arrow	Moves cursor right one word

5.2.2 Editing

DELETE OR CTRL+D	Deletes character at cursor
BACKSPACE or CTRL+H	Deletes character left of cursor
CTRL+U	Cuts all characters left of cursor
CTRL+K	Cuts all characters right of cursor, including cursor
CTRL+X	Cuts whole line
ESC (Win only)	Deletes whole line
CTRL+V	Pastes text from buffer to left of cursor
CTRL+T	Transposes character at cursor and character left of cursor

5.2.3 History Retrieval

Up Arrow or CTRL+P	Retrieves previous line in history
Down Arrow or CTRL+N	Retrieves next line in history

PAGE UP or CTRL+W	Retrieves previous line in history that matches text to left of cursor
PAGE DOWN or CTRL+S	Retrieves next line in history that matches text to left of cursor
ALT+H or OPTION+H (MAC only)	Prints prompt history to screen
!!	Runs last line in history
! <i>num</i>	Runs the <i>num</i> line in history
!- <i>num</i>	Runs the line <i>num</i> before current line in history; !-1 is equivalent to !!
! <i>text</i>	Runs last line in history beginning with <i>text</i>
ALT+/ or ALT+? or OPTION+/ (MAC only)	Prints help screen

Note that some of these keystrokes are mapped differently on different computers. For example, on some computers, SHIFT+RIGHT ARROW behaves the same as RIGHT ARROW, while ALT+RIGHT ARROW moves the cursor right one word. Therefore, multiple keystroke mappings have been supported to maximize the availability of these commands on any given machine.

5.3 Interactive Commands

5.3.1 quit

The **quit** command will exit TGAUSS.

The format for **quit** is:

`quit`

You can also use the **system** command to exit TGAUSS from either the command line or a program (see **system** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE).

The format for **system** is:

`system`

5.3.2 ed

The **ed** command will open an input file in an external text editor (see **ed** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE).

The format for **ed** is:

`ed filename`

5.3.3 browse

The **browse** command allows you to search for specific symbols in a file and open the file in the default editor. You can use wildcards to extend search capabilities of the **browse** command.

The format for **browse** is:

`browse symbol`

5.3.4 config

The **config** command gives you access to the configuration menu allowing you to change the way **GAUSS** runs and compiles files.

The format for **config** is:

config

Run Menu

Translator	Toggles on/off the translation of a file using dataloop . The translator is not necessary for GAUSS program files not using dataloop .
Translator line number tracking	Toggles on/off execution time line number tracking of the original file before translation.
Line number tracking	Toggles on/off the execution time line number tracking. If the translator is on, the line numbers refer to the translated file.

Compile Menu

Autoload	Toggles on/off the autoloader.								
Autodelete	Toggles on/off autodelete.								
GAUSS Library	Toggles on/off the GAUSS library functions.								
User Library	Toggles on/off the user library functions.								
Declare Warnings	Toggles on/off the declare warning messages during compiling.								
Compiler Trace	Includes the following options: <table><tr><td>Off</td><td>Turns off the compiler trace function.</td></tr><tr><td>File</td><td>Traces program file openings and closings.</td></tr><tr><td>Line</td><td>Traces compilation by line.</td></tr><tr><td>Symbol</td><td>Creates a report of procedures and the local and global symbols they reference.</td></tr></table>	Off	Turns off the compiler trace function.	File	Traces program file openings and closings.	Line	Traces compilation by line.	Symbol	Creates a report of procedures and the local and global symbols they reference.
Off	Turns off the compiler trace function.								
File	Traces program file openings and closings.								
Line	Traces compilation by line.								
Symbol	Creates a report of procedures and the local and global symbols they reference.								

5.4 Debugging

The **debug** command runs a program under the source level debugger.

The format for **debug** is:

`debug filename`

5.4.1 General Functions

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| ? | Displays a list of available commands. |
| q/Esc | Exits the debugger and returns to the GAUSS command line. |
| +/- | Disables the last command repeat function. |

5.4.2 Listing Functions

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| l number | Displays a specified number of lines of source code in the current file. |
| lc | Displays source code in the current file starting with the current line. |
| ll file line | Displays source code in the named file starting with the specified line. |
| ll file | Displays source code in the named file starting with the first line. |
| ll line | Displays source code starting with the specified line. File does not change. |
| ll | Displays the next page of source code. |
| lp | Displays the previous page of source code. |

5.4.3 Execution Functions

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| s number | Executes the specified number of lines, stepping into procedures. |
|-----------------|---|

n <i>number</i>	Executes the specified number of lines, stepping over procedures.																
x <i>number</i>	Executes code from the beginning of the program to the specified line count, or until a breakpoint is hit.																
g <i>[[args]]</i>	Executes from the current line to the end of the program, stopping at breakpoints. The optional arguments specify other stopping points. The syntax for each optional argument is: <table><tr><td><i>filename line period</i></td><td>The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the named file.</td></tr><tr><td><i>filename line</i></td><td>The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the named file.</td></tr><tr><td><i>filename ,, period</i></td><td>The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches any line in the named file.</td></tr><tr><td><i>line period</i></td><td>The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the current file.</td></tr><tr><td><i>filename</i></td><td>The debugger will stop at every line in the named file.</td></tr><tr><td><i>line</i></td><td>The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the current file.</td></tr><tr><td><i>procedure period</i></td><td>The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the first line in a called procedure.</td></tr><tr><td><i>procedure</i></td><td>The debugger will stop every time it reaches the first line in a called procedure.</td></tr></table>	<i>filename line period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the named file.	<i>filename line</i>	The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the named file.	<i>filename ,, period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches any line in the named file.	<i>line period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the current file.	<i>filename</i>	The debugger will stop at every line in the named file.	<i>line</i>	The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the current file.	<i>procedure period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the first line in a called procedure.	<i>procedure</i>	The debugger will stop every time it reaches the first line in a called procedure.
<i>filename line period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the named file.																
<i>filename line</i>	The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the named file.																
<i>filename ,, period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches any line in the named file.																
<i>line period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the current file.																
<i>filename</i>	The debugger will stop at every line in the named file.																
<i>line</i>	The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the current file.																
<i>procedure period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the first line in a called procedure.																
<i>procedure</i>	The debugger will stop every time it reaches the first line in a called procedure.																
j <i>[[args]]</i>	Executes code to a specified line, procedure, or period in the file without stopping at breakpoints. The optional arguments are the same as g , listed above.																
jx <i>number</i>	Executes code to the execution count specified (<i>number</i>) without stopping at breakpoints.																
o	Executes the remainder of the current procedure (or to a breakpoint) and stops at the next line in the calling procedure.																

5.4.4 View Commands

- v** `[[vars]]` Searches for (a local variable, then a global variable) and displays the value of a specified variable.
- v\$** `[[vars]]` Searches for (a local variable, then a global variable) and displays the specified character matrix.

The display properties of matrices and string arrays can be set using the following commands.

- r** Specifies the number of rows to be shown.
- c** Specifies the number of columns to be shown.
- num,num** Specifies the indices of the upper left corner of the block to be shown.
- w** Specifies the width of the columns to be shown.
- p** Specifies the precision shown.
- f** Specifies the format of the numbers as decimal, scientific, or auto format.
- q** Quits the matrix viewer.

5.4.5 Breakpoint Commands

- lb** Shows all the breakpoints currently defined.
- b** `[[args]]` Sets a breakpoint in the code. The syntax for each optional argument is:
 - filename line period* The debugger will stop every *period* times it reaches the specified *line* in the named file.
 - filename line* The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified *line* in the named file.
 - filename ,, period* The debugger will stop every *period* times it reaches any line in the named file.

<i>line period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the specified <i>line</i> in the current file.
<i>filename</i>	The debugger will stop at every line in the named file.
<i>line</i>	The debugger will stop when it reaches the specified line in the current file.
<i>procedure period</i>	The debugger will stop every <i>period</i> times it reaches the first line in a called procedure.
<i>procedure</i>	The debugger will stop every time it reaches the first line in a called procedure.
d <i>[[args]]</i>	Removes a previously specified breakpoint. The optional arguments are the same arguments as b , listed above.

5.5 Using the Source Browser in TGAUSS

To start the Source Browser in TGAUSS, type **BROWSE** followed by a symbol name. When the Source Browser is active, the prompt displays **Browse: . GAUSS** searches through all active libraries for the file in which the symbol is defined. If found, the file containing the source code is opened in the default editor.

Wildcard (*) searches can also be used. When using wildcard searches, each symbol that the string matches will be displayed on-screen in a numbered list. To select a specific command to view in the default editor, select the number from the list.

The Source Browser will remain active until you type **CTRL-C** to return to the **GAUSS** prompt.

Language Fundamentals 6

GAUSS is a compiled language. **GAUSS** is also an interpreter. A compiled language, because **GAUSS** scans the entire program once and translates it into a binary code before it starts to execute the program. An interpreter, because the binary code is not the native code of the CPU. When **GAUSS** executes the binary pseudocode it must “interpret” each instruction for the computer.

How can **GAUSS** be so fast if it is an interpreter? Two reasons. First, **GAUSS** has a fast interpreter, and the binary compiled code is compact and efficient. Second, and most significantly, **GAUSS** is a matrix language. It is designed to tackle problems that can be solved in terms of matrix or vector equations. Much of the time lost in interpreting the pseudocode is made up in the matrix or vector operations.

This chapter will enable you to understand the distinction between “compile time” and “execution time”, two very different stages in the life of a **GAUSS** program.

6.1 Expressions

An expression is a matrix, string, constant, function reference, procedure reference, or any combination of these joined by operators. An expression returns a result that can be assigned to a

variable with the assignment operator '='.

6.2 Statements

A statement is a complete expression or command. Statements end with a semicolon.

```
y = x*3;
```

If an expression has no assignment operator (=), it will be assumed to be an implicit **print** statement:

```
print x*3;
```

or

```
x*3;
```

Here is an example of a statement that is a command rather than an expression:

```
output on;
```

Commands cannot be used as a part of an expression.

There can be multiple statements on the same line as long as each statement is terminated with a semicolon.

6.2.1 Executable Statements

Executable statements are statements that can be “executed” over and over during the execution phase of a **GAUSS** program (execution time). As an executable statement is compiled, binary code is added to the program being compiled at the current location of the instruction pointer. This binary code will be executed whenever the interpreter passes through this section of the program. If this code is in a loop, it will be executed each iteration of the loop.

Here are some examples of executable statements:

```
y = 34.25;
```

```
print y;
```

```
x = 1 3 7 2 9 4 0 3 ;
```

6.2.2 Nonexecutable Statements

Nonexecutable statements are statements that have an effect only when the program is compiled (compile time). They generate no executable code at the current location of the instruction pointer.

Here are two examples:

```
declare matrix x = 1 2 3 4 ;
```

```
external matrix ybar;
```

Procedure definitions are nonexecutable. They do not generate executable code at the current location of the instruction pointer.

Here is an example:

```
zed = rndn(3,3);

proc sqrtinv(x);
    local y;
    y = sqrt(x);
    retp(y+inv(x));
endp;

zsi = sqrtinv(zed);
```

There are two executable statements in the example above: the first line and the last line. In the binary code that is generated, the last line will follow immediately after the first line. The last line is the **call** to the procedure. This generates executable code. The procedure definition generates no code at the current location of the instruction pointer.

There is code generated in the procedure definition, but it is isolated from the rest of the program. It is executable only within the scope of the procedure and can be reached only by calling the procedure.

6.3 Programs

A program is any set of statements that are run together at one time. There are two sections within a program.

6.3.1 Main Section

The main section of the program is all of the code that is compiled together **WITHOUT** relying on the autoloader. This means code that is in the main file or is included in the compilation of the main file with an **#include** statement. **ALL** executable code should be in the main section.

There must always be a main section even if it consists only of a call to the one and only procedure called in the program.

6.3.2 Secondary Sections

Secondary sections of the program are files that are neither run directly nor included in the main section with **#include** statements.

The secondary sections of the program can be left to the autoloader to locate and compile when they are needed. Secondary sections must have only procedure definitions and other nonexecutable statements.

#include statements are allowed in secondary sections as long as the file being included does not violate the above criteria.

Here is an example of a secondary section:

```
declare matrix tol = 1.0e-15;

proc feq(a,b);
    retp(abs(a-b) <= tol);
endp;
```

6.4 Compiler Directives

Compiler directives are commands that tell **GAUSS** how to process a program during compilation. Directives determine what the final compiled form of a program will be. They can affect part or all of the source code for a program. Directives are not executable statements and have no effect at run-time. They do not take a semicolon at the end of the line.

The **#include** statement mentioned earlier is actually a compiler directive. It tells **GAUSS** to compile code from a separate file as though it were actually part of the file being compiled. This code is compiled in at the position of the **#include** statement.

Here are the compiler directives available in **GAUSS**:

#define	Define a case-insensitive text-replacement or flag variable.
----------------	--

#definecs	Define a case-sensitive text-replacement or flag variable.
#undef	Undefine a text-replacement or flag variable.
#ifdef	Compile code block if a variable has been #define 'd.
#ifndef	Compile code block if a variable has not been #define 'd.
#iflight	Compile code block if running GAUSS Light .
#ifdos	Compile code block if running DOS.
#ifos2win	Compile code block if running OS/2 or Windows.
#ifunix	Compile code block if running UNIX.
#else	Else clause for #if-#else-#endif code block.
#endif	End of #if-#else-#endif code block.
#include	Include code from another file in program.
#lineson	Compile program with line number and file name records.
#linesoff	Compile program without line number and file name records.
#srcfile	Insert source file name record at this point (currently used when doing data loop translation).
#srcline	Insert source file line number record at this point (currently used when doing data loop translation).

The **#define** statement can be used to define abstract constants. For example, you could define the default graphics page size as:

```
#define hpage      9.0
#define vpage      6.855
```

and then write your program using **hpage** and **vpage**. **GAUSS** will replace them with 9.0 and 6.855 when it compiles the program. This makes a program much more readable.

The **#ifdef**–**#else**–**#endif** directives allow you to conditionally compile sections of a program, depending on whether a particular flag variable has been **#define**'d. For example:

```
#ifdef log_10
    y = log(x);
#else
    y = ln(x);
#endif
```

This allows the same program to calculate answers using different base logarithms, depending on whether or not the program has a **#define log_10** statement at the top.

#undef allows you to undefine text-replacement or flag variables so they no longer affect a program, or so you can **#define** them again with a different value for a different section of the program. If you use **#definecs** to define a case-sensitive variable, you must use the right case when **#undef**'ing it.

With **#lineson**, **#linesoff**, **#srcline**, and **#srcfile** you can include line number and file name records in your compiled code, so that run-time errors will be easier to track down. **#srcline** and **#srcfile** are currently used by **GAUSS** when doing data loop translation.

For more information on line number tracking, see **DEBUGGING**, Section 16.3 and see **DEBUGGING DATA LOOPS**, Section 19.3. See also **#lineson** in the **GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE**.

The syntax for **#srcfile** and **#srcline** is different than for the other directives that take arguments. Typically, directives do not take arguments in parentheses; that is, they look like keywords:

```
#define red 4
```

#srcfile and **#srcline**, however, do take their arguments in parentheses (like procedures):

```
#srcline(12)
```

This allows you to place **#srcline** statements in the middle of **GAUSS** commands, so that line numbers are reported precisely as you want them. For example:

```
#srcline(1) print "Here is a multi-line "  
#srcline(2) "sentence--if it contains a run-time error, "  
#srcline(3) "you will know exactly "  
#srcline(4) "which part of the sentence has the problem.";
```

The argument supplied to **#srcfile** does not need quotes:

```
#srcfile(/gauss/test.e)
```

6.5 Procedures

A procedure allows you to define a new function which you can then use as if it were an intrinsic function. It is called in the same way as an intrinsic function.

```
y = myproc(a,b,c);
```

Procedures are isolated from the rest of your program and cannot be entered except by calling them. Some or all of the variables inside a procedure can be **local** variables. **local** variables exist only when the procedure is actually executing and then disappear. Local variables cannot get mixed up with other variables of the same name in your main program or in other procedures.

For details on defining and calling procedures, see **PROCEDURES AND KEYWORDS**, chapter 8.

6.6 Data Types

There are four basic data types in **GAUSS**, matrices, N-dimensional arrays, strings and string arrays. It is not necessary to declare the type of a variable, but it is good programming practice to respect the types of variables whenever possible. The data type and size can change in the course of a program.

The **declare** statement, used for compile-time initialization, enforces type checking.

Short strings of up to 8 bytes can be entered into elements of matrices, to form character matrices (For details, see **CHARACTER MATRICES**, Section [6.6.7](#)).

6.6.1 Constants

The following constant types are supported:

Decimal

Decimal constants can be either integer or floating point values:

1.34e-10

1.34e123

-1.34e+10

-1.34d-10

1.34d10

1.34d+10

123.456789345

Up to 18 consecutive digits before and after the decimal point(depending on the platform) are significant, but the final result will be rounded to double precision if necessary. The range is the same as for matrices (For details, see [MATRICES](#), Section [6.6.2](#)).

String

String constants are enclosed in quotation marks:

“This is a string.”

Hexadecimal Integer

Hexadecimal integer constants are prefixed with **0x**:

0x0ab53def2

Hexadecimal Floating Point

Hexadecimal floating point constants are prefixed with **0v**. This allows you to input a double precision value exactly as you want using 16 hexadecimal digits. The highest order byte is to the left:

0vfff8000000000000

6.6.2 Matrices

Matrices are 2-dimensional arrays of double precision numbers. All matrices are implicitly complex, although if it consists only of zeros, the imaginary part may take up no space. Matrices are stored in row major order. A 2×3 real matrix will be stored in the following way from the lowest addressed element to the highest addressed element:

[1, 1] [1, 2] [1, 3] [2, 1] [2, 2] [2, 3]

A 2×3 complex matrix will be stored in the following way from the lowest addressed element to the highest addressed element:

(*real part*) [1, 1] [1, 2] [1, 3] [2, 1] [2, 2] [2, 3]
 (*imaginary part*) [1, 1] [1, 2] [1, 3] [2, 1] [2, 2] [2, 3]

Conversion between complex and real matrices occurs automatically and is transparent to the user in most cases. Functions are provided to provide explicit control when necessary.

All elements of a **GAUSS** matrix are stored in double precision floating point format, and each takes up 8 bytes of memory. This is the IEEE 754 format:

Bytes	Data Type	Significant Digits	Range
8	floating point	15–16	$4.19 \times 10^{-307} \leq |X| \leq 1.67 \times 10^{+308}$

Matrices with only one element (1×1 matrices) are referred to as scalars, and matrices with only one row or column (1×N or N×1 matrices) are referred to as vectors.

Any matrix or vector can be indexed with two indices. Vectors can be indexed with one index. Scalars can be indexed with one or two indices also, because scalars, vectors, and matrices are the same data type to **GAUSS**.

The majority of functions and operators in **GAUSS** take matrices as arguments. The following functions and operators are used for defining, saving, and loading matrices:

[]	Indexing matrices.
=	Assignment operator.
|	Vertical concatenation.
~	Horizontal concatenation.
con	Numeric input from keyboard.
cons	Character input from keyboard.
declare	Compile-time matrix or string initialization.
let	Matrix definition statement.
load	Load matrix (same as loadm).
readr	Read from a GAUSS matrix or data set file.
save	Save matrices, procedures and strings to disk.
saved	Convert a matrix to a GAUSS data set.
stof	Convert string to matrix.
submat	Extract a submatrix.
writer	Write data to a GAUSS data set.

Following are some examples of matrix definition statements.

An assignment statement followed by data enclosed in braces is an implicit **let** statement. Only constants are allowed in **let** statements; operators are illegal. When braces are used in **let** statements, commas are used to separate rows. The statement

```
let x = 1 2 3, 4 5 6, 7 8 9 ;
```

or

```
x = 1 2 3, 4 5 6, 7 8 9 ;
```

will result in

```
x = 1 2 3
    4 5 6
    7 8 9
```

The statement

```
let x[3,3] = 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9;
```

will result in

```
x = 1 2 3
    4 5 6
    7 8 9
```

The statement

```
let x[3,3] = 1;
```

will result in

```
x = 1 1 1
    1 1 1
    1 1 1
```

The statement

```
let x[3,3];
```

will result in

$$x = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The statement

```
let x = 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9;
```

will result in

$$x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \\ 6 \\ 7 \\ 8 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}$$

Complex constants can be entered in a **let** statement. In the following example, the + or - is not a mathematical operator, but connects the two parts of a complex number. There should be no spaces between the + or - and the parts of the number. If a number has both real and imaginary parts, the trailing 'i' is not necessary. If a number has no real part, you can indicate that it is imaginary by appending the 'i'. The statement

```
let x[2,2] = 1+2i 3-4 5 6i;
```

will result in

$$x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 + 2i & 3 - 4i \\ 5 & 0 + 6i \end{bmatrix}$$

Complex constants can also be used with the **declare**, **con** and **stof** statements.

An “empty matrix” is a matrix that contains no data. Empty matrices are created with the **let** statement and braces:

```
x = {};
```

Empty matrices are supported by several functions, including **rows** and **cols** and the concatenation (**~**,**|**) operators.

```
x = {};  
hsec0 = hsec;  
do until hsec-hsec0 > 6000;  
    x = x ~ data_in(hsec-hsec0);  
endo;
```

You can test whether a matrix is empty by entering **rows(x)**, **cols(x)** and **scalerr(x)**. If the matrix is empty **rows** and **cols** will return a 0, and **scalerr** will return 65535.

The **~** is the horizontal concatenation operator and the **|** is the vertical concatenation operator. The statement

```
y = 1~2|3~4;
```

will be evaluated as

```
y = (1 ~ 2) | (3 ~ 4);
```

and will result in a 2×2 matrix because horizontal concatenation has precedence over vertical concatenation:

```
1  2  
3  4
```

The statement

```
y = 1+1~2*2|3-2~6/2;
```

will be evaluated as

```
y = ((1 + 1) ~ (2 * 2)) | ((3 - 2) ~ (6/2));
```

and will result in a 2×2 matrix because the arithmetic operators have precedence over concatenation:

```
2 4  
1 3
```

For more information, see **OPERATOR PRECEDENCE**, Section [7.7](#).

The **let** command is used to initialize matrices with constant values:

```
let x[2,2] = 1 2 3 4;
```

Unlike the concatenation operators, it cannot be used to define matrices in terms of expressions such as

```
y = x1-x2~x2|x3*3~x4;
```

The statement

```
y = x[1:3,5:8];
```

will put the intersection of the first three rows and the fifth through eighth columns of **x** into the matrix **y**.

The statement

```
y = x[1 3 1,5 5 9];
```

will create a 3×3 matrix **y** with the intersection of the specified rows and columns pulled from **x** (in the indicated order).

The following code

```
let r = 1 3 1; let c = 5 5 9; y = x[r,c];
```

will have the same effect as the previous example, but is more general.

The statement

```
y[2,4] = 3;
```

will set the 2,4 element of the existing matrix **y** to 3. This statement is illegal if **y** does not have at least 2 rows and 4 columns.

The statement

```
x = con(3,2);
```

will cause the following prompt to be printed in the window:

```
- (1,1)
```

indicating that the user should enter the [1,1] element of the matrix. Entering a number and then pressing ENTER will cause a prompt for the next element of the matrix to appear. Pressing ? will display a help screen, and pressing **x** will exit.

The statement

```
load x[] = b:mydata.asc
```

will load data contained in an ASCII file into an $N \times 1$ vector **x**. (Use **rows(x)** to find out how many numbers were loaded, and use **reshape(x,N,K)** to reshape it to an $N \times K$ matrix).

The statement

```
load x;
```

will load the matrix **x.fmt** from disk (using the current load path) into the matrix **x** in memory.

The statement

```
open d1 = dat1;  
x = readr(d1,100);
```

will read the first 100 rows of the **GAUSS** data set **dat1.dat**.

6.6.3 Sparse Matrices

Many **GAUSS** operators and commands support the sparse matrix data type. You may use any of the following commands to create a sparse matrix:

denseToSp	Converts a dense matrix to a sparse matrix.
denseToSpRE	Converts a dense matrix to a sparse matrix, using a relative epsilon.

packedToSp	Creates a sparse matrix from a packed matrix of non-zero values and row and column indices.
spCreate	Creates a sparse matrix from vectors of non-zero values, row indices, and column indices.
spEye	Creates a sparse identity matrix.
spOnes	Generates a sparse matrix containing only ones and zeros
spZeros	Creates a sparse matrix containing no non-zero values.

See SPARSE MATRICES, Chapter 9, for more information.

6.6.4 N-dimensional Arrays

Many **GAUSS** commands support arrays of N dimensions. The following commands may be used to create and manipulate an N-dimensional array:

aconcat	Concatenate conformable matrices and arrays in a user-specified dimension.
aeye	Create an N-dimensional array in which the planes described by the two trailing dimensions of the array are equal to the identity.
areshape	Reshape a scalar, matrix, or array into an array of user-specified size.
arrayalloc	Create an N-dimensional array with unspecified contents.
arrayinit	Create an N-dimensional array with a specified fill value.
mattoarray	Convert a matrix to a type array.

See N-DIMENSIONAL ARRAYS, Chapter 10, for a more detailed explanation.

6.6.5 Strings

Strings can be used to store the names of files to be opened, messages to be printed, entire files, or whatever else you might need. Any byte value is legal in a string from 0–255. The buffer where a string is stored always contains a terminating byte of ASCII 0. This allows passing strings as arguments to C functions through the Foreign Language Interface.

Here is a partial list of the functions for manipulating strings:

\$+	Combine two strings into one long string.
^	Interpret following name as a variable, not a literal.
chrs	Convert vector of ASCII codes to character string.
dttostr	Convert a matrix containing dates in DT scalar format to a string array.
ftocv	Character representation of numbers in N×K matrix.
ftos	Character representation of numbers in 1×1 matrix.
ftostrC	Convert a matrix to a string array using a C language format specification.
getf	Load ASCII or binary file into string.
indcv	Find index of element in character vector.
lower	Convert to lowercase.
stof	Convert string to floating point.
strindx	Find index of a string within a second string.
strlen	Length of a string.
strsect	Extract substring of string.
strsplit	Split an N×1 string vector into an N×K string array of the individual tokens.

strsplitPad	Split a string vector into a string array of the individual tokens. Pads on the right with null strings.
strtodt	Convert a string array of dates to a matrix in DT scalar format.
strtof	Convert a string array to a numeric matrix.
strtofcplx	Convert a string array to a complex numeric matrix.
upper	Convert to uppercase.
vals	Convert from string to numeric vector of ASCII codes.

Strings can be created like this:

```
x = "example string";
```

or

```
x = cons;                                /* keyboard input */
```

or

```
x = getf("myfile",0);                    /* read a file into a string */
```

They can be printed like this:

```
print x;
```

A character matrix must have a '\$' prefixed to it in a **print** statement:

```
print $x;
```

A string can be saved to disk with the **save** command in a file with a `.fst` extension and then loaded with the **load** command:

```
save x;  
loads x;
```

or

```
loads x=x.fst;
```

The backslash is used as the escape character inside double quotes to enter special characters:

<code>"\b"</code>	backspace (ASCII 8)
<code>"\e"</code>	escape (ASCII 27)
<code>"\f"</code>	formfeed (ASCII 12)
<code>"\g"</code>	beep (ASCII 7)
<code>"\l"</code>	line feed (ASCII 10)
<code>"\r"</code>	carriage return (ASCII 13)
<code>"\t"</code>	tab (ASCII 9)
<code>"\""</code>	a backslash
<code>"####"</code>	the ASCII character whose decimal value is "####".

When entering DOS pathnames in double quotes, two backslashes must be used to insert one backslash:

```
st = "c:\\gauss\\myprog.prg";
```

An important use of strings and character elements of matrices is with the substitution operator (^).

In the command

```
create f1 = olsdat with x,4,2;
```

by default, **GAUSS** will interpret the **olsdat** as a literal; that is, the literal name of the **GAUSS** data file you want to create. It will also interpret the **x** as the literal prefix string for the variable names: **x1 x2 x3 x4**.

If you want to get the data set name from a string variable, the substitution operator (^) could be used as:

```
dataset="olsdat";  
create f1=^dataset with x,4,2;
```

If you want to get the data set name from a string variable and the variable names from a character vector, use

```
dataset="olsdat";  
let vnames=age pay sex;  
create f1=^dataset with ^vnames,0,2;
```

The substitution operator (^) works with **load** and **save** also:

```
lpath="/gauss/procs";  
name="mydata";  
load path=^lpath x=^name;  
command="dir *.fmt";
```

The general syntax is:

^variable_name

Expressions are not allowed. The following commands are supported with the substitution operator (^):

```
create f1=^dataset with ^vnames,0,2;  
create f1=^dataset using ^cmdfile;  
open f1=^dataset;  
output file=^outfile;  
load x=^datafile;  
load path=^lpath x,y,z,t,w;  
loadexe buf=^exefile;  
save ^name=x;  
save path=^spath;  
dos ^cmdstr;  
run ^prog;  
msym ^mstring;
```

6.6.6 String Arrays

String arrays are $N \times K$ matrices of strings. Here is a partial list of the functions for manipulating string arrays:

\$|	Vertical string array concatenation operator.
\$~	Horizontal string array concatenation operator.
[]	Extract subarrays or individual strings from their corresponding array, or assign their values.
'	Transpose operator.
./	Bookkeeping transpose operator.
declare	Initialize variables at compile time.
delete	Delete specified global symbols.
fgetsa	Read multiple lines of text from a file.
fgetsat	Reads multiple lines of text from a file, discarding newlines.

format	Define output format for matrices, string arrays, and strings.
fputs	Write strings to a file.
fputst	Write strings to a file, appending newlines.
let	Initialize matrices, strings, and string arrays.
loads	Load a string or string array file (.fst file).
lprint	Print expressions to the printer.
lshow	Print global symbol table to the printer.
print	Print expressions on window and/or auxiliary output.
reshape	Reshape a matrix or string array to new dimensions.
save	Save matrix, string array, string, procedure, function or keyword to disk and gives the disk file either a .fmt, .fst or .fcg extension.
show	Display global symbol table.
sortcc	Quick-sort rows of matrix or string array based on character column.
type	Indicate whether variable passed as argument is matrix, string, or string array.
typecv	Indicate whether variables named in argument are strings, string arrays, matrices, procedures, functions or keywords.
varget	Access the global variable named by a string array.
varput	Assign the global variable named by a string array.
vec	Stack columns of a matrix or string array to form a column vector.
vecr	Stack rows of a matrix or string array to form a column vector.

String arrays are created through the use of the string array concatenation operators. Below is a contrast of the horizontal string and horizontal string array concatenation operators.

```
x = "age";  
y = "pay";  
n = "sex";  
s = x $+ y $+ n;  
sa = x $~ y $~ n;
```

```
s = agepaysex
```

```
sa = age    pay    sex
```

6.6.7 Character Matrices

Matrices can have either numeric or character elements. For convenience, a matrix containing character elements is referred to as a character matrix.

A character matrix is not a separate data type, but gives you the ability to store and manipulate data elements that are composed of ASCII characters as well as floating point numbers. For example, you may want to concatenate a column vector containing the names of the variables in an analysis onto a matrix containing the coefficients, standard errors, t-statistic, and p-value. You can then print out the entire matrix with a separate format for each column with one call to the function **printfm**.

The logic of the programs will dictate the type of data assigned to a matrix, and the increased flexibility allowed by being able to bundle both types of data together in a single matrix can be very powerful. You could, for instance, create a moment matrix from your data, concatenate a new row onto it containing the names of the variables and save it to disk with the **save** command.

Numeric matrices are double precision, which means that each element is stored in 8 bytes. A character matrix can thus have elements of up to 8 characters.

GAUSS does not automatically keep track of whether a matrix contains character or numeric information. The ASCII to **GAUSS** conversion program ATOG will record the types of variables in a data set when it creates it. The **create** command will, also. The function **vartypef** gets a vector of variable type information from a data set. This vector of ones and zeros can be used by **printfm** when printing your data. Since **GAUSS** does not know whether a matrix has character or

numeric information, it is up to you to specify which type of data it contains when printing the contents of the matrix. (For details, see **print** and **printfm** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

Most functions that take a string argument will take an element of a character matrix also, interpreting it as a string of up to 8 characters.

6.6.8 Date and Time Formats

DT Scalar Format

The DT scalar format is a double precision representation of the date and time. In the DT scalar format, the number

20010421183207

represents 18:32:07 or 6:32:07 PM on April 21, 2001.

DTV Vector Format

The DTV vector is a 1×8 vector. The format for the DTV vector is:

- [1] Year
- [2] Month, 1-12
- [3] Day of month, 1-31
- [4] Hour of day, 0-23
- [5] Minute of hour, 0-59
- [6] Second of minute, 0-59
- [7] Day of week, 0-6 where 0 is Sunday
- [8] Day since beginning of year, 0-365

UTC Scalar Format

The UTC scalar format is the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, Greenwich Mean Time.

6.6.9 Special Data Types

The IEEE floating point format has many encodings that have special meaning. The **print** command will print them accurately so that you can tell if your calculation is producing meaningful results.

NaN

There are many floating point encodings which do not correspond to a real number. These encodings are referred to as NaN's. NaN stands for Not A Number.

Certain numerical errors will cause the math coprocessor to create a NaN called an "indefinite". This will be printed as a -NaN when using the **print** command. These values are created by the following operations:

- $+\infty$ plus $-\infty$
- $+\infty$ minus $+\infty$
- $-\infty$ minus $-\infty$
- $0 * \infty$
- ∞ / ∞
- $0 / 0$
- Operations where one or both operands is a NaN
- Trigonometric functions involving ∞

INF

When the math coprocessor overflows, the result will be a properly signed infinity. Subsequent calculations will not deal well with an infinity; it usually signals an error in your program. The result of an operation involving an infinity is most often a NaN.

DEN, UNN

When some math coprocessors underflow, they may do so gradually by shifting the significand of the number as necessary to keep the exponent in range. The result of this is a denormal (DEN). When denormals are used in calculations, they are usually handled automatically in an appropriate way. The result will either be an unnormal (UNN), which like the denormal represents a number very close to zero, or a normal, depending on how significant the effect of the denormal was in the calculation. In some cases the result will be a NaN.

Following are some procedures for dealing with these values. These procedures are not defined in the **Run-Time Library**. If you want to use them, you will need to define them yourself.

The procedure **is indef** will return 1 (true) if the matrix passed to it contains any NaN's that are the indefinite mentioned earlier. The **GAUSS** missing value code as well as **GAUSS** scalar error codes are NaN's, but this procedure tests only for indefinite:

```
proc is indef(x);  
    retp(not x $/= __INDEFn);  
endp;
```

Be sure to call **gausset** before calling **is indef**. **gausset** will initialize the value of the global **__INDEFn** to a platform-specific encoding.

The procedure **normal** will return a matrix with all denormals and unnormals set to zero.

```
proc normal(x);  
    retp(x .* (abs(x) .> 4.19e-307));  
endp;
```

The procedure **is inf**, will return 1 (true) if the matrix passed to it contains any infinities:

```
proc is inf(x);  
    local plus, minus;  
    plus = __INFp;
```

```
minus = __INFn;  
retp(not x /= plus or not x /= minus);  
endp;
```

Be sure to call **gausset** before calling **isinf**. **gausset** will initialize the values of the globals **__INFn** and **__INFp** to platform specific encodings.

6.7 Operator Precedence

The order in which an expression is evaluated is determined by the precedence of the operators involved and the order in which they are used. For example, the ***** and **/** operators have a higher precedence than the **+** and **-** operators. In expressions that contain these operators, the operand pairs associated with the ***** or **/** operator are evaluated first. Whether ***** or **/** is evaluated first depends on which comes first in the particular expression. For a listing of the precedence of all operators, see OPERATOR PRECEDENCE, Section [7.7](#).

The expression

$$-5+3/4+6*3$$

is evaluated as

$$(-5) + (3/4) + (6 * 3)$$

Within a term, operators of equal precedence are evaluated from left to right.

The term

$$2^3^7$$

is evaluated

$$(2^3)^7$$

In the expression

$$f1(x) * f2(y)$$

f1 is evaluated before **f2**.

Here are some examples:

Expression	Evaluation
a+b*c+d	$(a + (b * c)) + d$
-2+4-6*inv(8)/9	$((-2) + 4) - ((6 * inv(8))/9)$
3.14^5*6/(2+sqrt(3)/4)	$((3.14^5) * 6) / (2 + (sqrt(3)/4))$
-a+b*c^2	$(-a) + (b * (c^2))$
a+b-c+d-e	$((((a + b) - c) + d) - e)$
a^b^c*d	$((a^b)^c) * d$
a*b/d*c	$((a * b) / d) * c$
a^b+c*d	$(a^b) + (c * d)$
2^4!	$2^{(4!)}$
2*3!	$2 * (3!)$

6.8 Flow Control

A computer language needs facilities for decision making and looping to control the order in which computations are done. **GAUSS** has several kinds of flow control statements.

6.8.1 Looping

do loop

The **do** statement can be used in **GAUSS** to control looping.

```
do while scalar_expression; /* loop if expression is true */  
    .  
    .  
    statements  
    .  
    .  
endo;
```

also

```
do until scalar_expression; /* loop if expression is false */  
    .  
    .  
    statements  
    .  
    .  
endo;
```

The *scalar_expression* is any expression that returns a scalar result. The expression will be evaluated as TRUE if its real part is nonzero and FALSE if it is zero. There is no counter variable that is automatically incremented in a **do** loop. If one is used, it must be set to its initial value before the loop is entered and explicitly incremented or decremented inside the loop.

The following example illustrates nested **do** loops that use counter variables.

```
format /rdn 1,0;  
space = "      ";  
comma = ", ";  
i = 1;  
do while i <= 4;  
    j = 1;
```

```
do while j <= 3;
    print space i comma j;;
    j = j+1;
enddo;
i = i+1;
print;
enddo;
```

This will print:

1, 1	1, 2	1, 3
2, 1	2, 2	2, 3
3, 1	3, 2	3, 3
4, 1	4, 2	4, 3

Use the relational and logical operators without the dot '.' in the expression that controls a **do** loop. These operators always return a scalar result.

break and **continue** are used within **do** loops to control execution flow. When **break** is encountered, the program will jump to the statement following the **enddo**. This terminates the loop. When **continue** is encountered, the program will jump up to the top of the loop and reevaluate the **while** or **until** expression. This allows you to reiterate the loop without executing any more of the statements inside the loop:

```
do until eof(fp);          /* continue jumps here */
    x = packr(readr(fp,100));
    if scalmiss(x);
        continue;        /* iterate again */
    endif;
    s = s + sumc(x);
    count = count + rows(x);
    if count >= 10000;
        break;           /* break out of loop */
    endif;
enddo;
mean = s / count;         /* break jumps here */
```

for loop

The fastest looping construct in **GAUSS** is the **for** loop:

```
for counter (start, stop, step);  
    .  
    .  
    statements  
    .  
    .  
endfor;
```

counter is the literal name of the counter variable. *start*, *stop* and *step* are scalar expressions. *start* is the initial value, *stop* is the final value and *step* is the increment.

break and **continue** are also supported by **for** loops. (For more information, see **for** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

6.8.2 Conditional Branching

The **if** statement controls conditional branching:

```
if scalar_expression;  
    .  
    .  
    statements  
    .  
    .  
elseif scalar_expression;  
    .  
    .  
    statements  
    .  
    .
```

```

else;
    .
    .
    statements
    .
    .
endif;

```

The *scalar_expression* is any expression that returns a scalar result. The expression will be evaluated as TRUE if its real part is nonzero and FALSE if it is zero.

GAUSS will test the expression after the **if** statement. If it is TRUE, then the first list of statements is executed. If it is FALSE, then **GAUSS** will move to the expression after the first **elseif** statement, if there is one, and test it. It will keep testing expressions and will execute the first list of statements that corresponds to a TRUE expression. If no expression is TRUE, then the list of statements following the **else** statement is executed. After the appropriate list of statements is executed, the program will go to the statement following the **endif** and continue on.

Use the relational and logical operators without the dot ‘.’ in the expression that controls an **if** or **elseif** statement. These operators always return a scalar result.

if statements can be nested.

One **endif** is required per **if** clause. If an **else** statement is used, there may be only one per **if** clause. There may be as many **elseif**’s as are required. There need not be any **elseif**’s or any **else** statement within an **if** clause.

6.8.3 Unconditional Branching

The **goto** and **gosub** statements control unconditional branching. The target of both a **goto** and a **gosub** is a label.

goto

A **goto** is an unconditional jump to a label with no return:

```
label:
    .
    .
goto label;
```

Parameters can be passed with a **goto**. The number of parameters is limited by available stack space. This is helpful for common exit routines:

```
    .
    .
goto errout("Matrix singular");
    .
    .
goto errout("File not found");
    .
    .
errout:
    pop errmsg;
    errorlog errmsg;
end;
```

gosub

With a **gosub**, the address of the **gosub** statement is remembered and when a **return** statement is encountered, the program will resume executing at the statement following the **gosub**.

Parameters can be passed with a **gosub** in the same way as a **goto**. With a **gosub** it is also possible to return parameters with the **return** statement.

Subroutines are not isolated from the rest of your program and the variables referred to between the label and the **return** statement can be accessed from other places in your program.

Since a subroutine is only an address marked by a label, there can be subroutines inside of procedures. The variables used in these subroutines are the same variables that are known inside the procedure. They will not be unique to the subroutine, but they may be locals that are unique to

the procedure that the subroutine is in. (For details, see **gosub** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

6.9 Functions

Single line functions that return one item can be defined with the **fn** statement.

```
fn area(r) = pi * r * r;
```

These functions can be called in the same way as intrinsic functions. The above function could be used in the following program sequence.

```
diameter = 3;  
radius = 3 / 2;  
a = area(radius);
```

6.10 Rules of Syntax

This section lists the general rules of syntax for **GAUSS** programs.

6.10.1 Statements

A **GAUSS** program consists of a series of statements. A statement is a complete expression or command. Statements in **GAUSS** end with a semicolon with one exception: from the **GAUSS** command line, the final semicolon in an interactive program is implicit if it is not explicitly given:

```
(gauss) x=5; z=rndn(3,3); y=x+z
```

Column position is not significant. Blank lines are allowed. Inside a statement and outside of double quotes, the carriage return/line feed at the end of a physical line will be converted to a space character as the program is compiled.

A statement containing a quoted string can be continued across several lines with a backslash as follows.

```
s = "This is one really long string that would be "\
    "difficult to assign in just a single line.";
```

6.10.2 Case

GAUSS does not distinguish between uppercase and lowercase except inside double quotes.

6.10.3 Comments

```
// This comments out all text between the '//' and the end of
// the line
```

```
/* This kind of comment can be nested */
```

```
@ We consider this kind of comment to be obsolete, but it is
  supported for backwards compatibility @
```

6.10.4 Extraneous Spaces

Extraneous spaces are significant in **print** and **lprint** statements where the space is a delimiter between expressions:

```
print x y z;
```

In **print** and **lprint** statements, spaces can be used in expressions that are in parentheses:

```
print (x * y) (x + y);
```

6.10.5 Symbol Names

The names of matrices, strings, procedures, and functions can be up to 32 characters long. The characters must be alphanumeric or an underscore. The first character must be alphabetic or an underscore.

6.10.6 Labels

A label is used as the target of a **goto** or a **gosub**. The rules for naming labels are the same as for matrices, strings, procedures, and functions. A label is followed immediately by a colon:

```
here:
```

The reference to a label does not use a colon:

```
goto here;
```

6.10.7 Assignment Statements

The assignment operator is the equal sign '=':

```
y = x + z;
```

Multiple assignments must be enclosed in braces '{ }':

```
mant,pow = base10(x);
```

The comparison operator (equal to) is two equal signs ‘==’:

```
if x == y;  
    print "x is equal to y";  
endif;
```

6.10.8 Function Arguments

The arguments to functions are enclosed in parentheses ‘()’:

```
y = sqrt(x);
```

6.10.9 Indexing Matrices

Brackets ‘[]’ are used to index matrices:

```
x = { 1 2 3,  
      3 7 5,  
      3 7 4,  
      8 9 5,  
      6 1 8 };  
  
y = x[3,3];  
z = x[1 2:4,1 3];
```

Vectors can be indexed with either one or two indices:

```
v = 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 ;  
k = v[3];  
j = v[1,6:9];
```

`x[2,3]` returns the element in the second row and the third column of **`x`**.

`x[1 3 5,4 7]` returns the submatrix that is the intersection of rows 1, 3, and 5 and columns 4 and 7.

`x[:,3]` returns the third column of **`x`**.

`x[3:5,.]` returns the submatrix containing the third through the fifth rows of **`x`**.

The indexing operator will take vector arguments for submatrix extraction or submatrix assignments:

```
y = x[rv,cv];
```

```
y[rv,cv] = x;
```

`rv` and **`cv`** can be any expressions returning vectors or matrices. The elements of **`rv`** will be used as the row indices and the elements of **`cv`** will be used as the column indices. If **`rv`** is a scalar 0, all rows will be used; if **`cv`** is a scalar 0, all columns will be used. If a vector is used in an index expression, it is illegal to use the space operator or the colon operator on the same side of the comma as the vector.

6.10.10 Arrays of Matrices and Strings

It is possible to index sets of matrices or strings using the **`varget`** function.

In this example, a set of matrix names is assigned to **`mvec`**. The name **`y`** is indexed from **`mvec`** and passed to **`varget`** which will return the global matrix **`y`**. The returned matrix is inverted and assigned to **`g`**:

```
mvec = { x y z a };  
i = 2;  
g = inv(varget(mvec[i]));
```

The following procedure can be used to index the matrices in **mvec** more directly:

```
proc imvec(i);  
    retp(varget(mvec[i]));  
endp;
```

Then **imvec(i)** will equal the matrix whose name is in the i^{th} element of **mvec**.

In the example above, the procedure **imvec()** was written so that it always operates on the vector **mvec**. The following procedure makes it possible to pass in the vector of names being used:

```
proc get(array,i);  
    retp(varget(array[i]));  
endp;
```

Then **get(mvec,3)** will return the 3rd matrix listed in **mvec**.

```
proc put(x,array,i);  
    retp(varput(x,array[i]));  
endp;
```

And **put(x,mvec,3)** will assign **x** to the 3rd matrix listed in **mvec** and return a 1 if successful or a 0 if it fails.

6.10.11 Arrays of Procedures

It is also possible to index procedures. The ampersand operator (**&**) is used to return a pointer to a procedure.

Assume that **f1**, **f2**, and **f3** are procedures that take a single argument. The following code defines a procedure **fi** that will return the value of the i^{th} procedure, evaluated at **x**.

```
nms = &f1 | &f2 | &f3;

proc fi(x,i);
    local f;
    f = nms[i];
    local f:proc;
    retp( f(x) );
endp;
```

fi(x,2) will return **f2(x)**. The ampersand is used to return the pointers to the procedures. **nms** is a numeric vector that contains a set of pointers. The **local** statement is used twice. The first tells the compiler that **f** is a local matrix. The i^{th} pointer, which is just a number, is assigned to **f**. Then the second **local** statement tells the compiler to treat **f** as a procedure from this point on; thus the subsequent statement **f(x)** is interpreted as a procedure call.

Operators 7

7.1 Element-by-Element Operators

Element-by-element operators share common rules of conformability. Some functions that have two arguments also operate according to the same rules.

Element-by-element operators handle those situations in which matrices are not conformable according to standard rules of matrix algebra. When a matrix is said to be E×E conformable, it refers to this element-by-element conformability. The following cases are supported:

matrix **op** *matrix*

matrix **op** *scalar*

scalar **op** *matrix*

matrix **op** *vector*

vector **op** *matrix*

vector **op** *vector*

In a typical expression involving an element-by-element operator

$$z = x + y;$$

conformability is defined as follows:

- If x and y are the same size, the operations are carried out corresponding element by corresponding element:

$$x = \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 3 & 7 & 4 \end{array}$$

$$y = \begin{array}{ccc} 2 & 4 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 \\ 6 & 1 & 2 \end{array}$$

$$z = \begin{array}{ccc} 3 & 7 & 5 \\ 7 & 6 & 5 \\ 9 & 8 & 6 \end{array}$$

- If x is a matrix and y is a scalar, or vice versa, then the scalar is operated on with respect to every element in the matrix. For example, $x + 2$ will add 2 to every element of x :

$$x = \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 3 & 7 & 4 \end{array}$$

$$y = 2$$

$$z = \begin{array}{ccc} 3 & 5 & 4 \\ 6 & 7 & 3 \\ 5 & 9 & 6 \end{array}$$

- If x is an $N \times 1$ column vector and y is an $N \times K$ matrix, or vice versa, the vector is swept “across” the matrix:

vector		matrix		
1	→	2	4	3
4	→	3	1	4
3	→	6	1	2
result				
		3	5	4
		7	5	8
		9	4	5

- If x is an $1 \times K$ column vector and y is an $N \times K$ matrix, or vice versa, then the vector is swept “down” the matrix:

vector	2	4	3
	↓	↓	↓
	2	4	3
matrix	3	1	4
	6	1	2
	4	8	6
result	5	5	7
	8	5	5

- When one argument is a row vector and the other is a column vector, the result of an element-by-element operation will be the “table” of the two:

row vector		2	4	3	1
	3	5	7	6	4
column vector	2	4	6	5	3
	5	7	9	8	6

If x and y are such that none of these conditions apply, the matrices are not conformable to these operations and an error message will be generated.

7.2 Matrix Operators

The following operators work on matrices. Some assume numeric data and others will work on either character or numeric data.

7.2.1 Numeric Operators

For details on how matrix conformability is defined for element-by-element operators, see [ELEMENT-BY-ELEMENT OPERATORS](#), Section [7.1](#).

+ Addition

$$y = x + z;$$

Performs element-by-element addition.

– Subtraction or negation

$$\begin{aligned}y &= x - z; \\y &= -k;\end{aligned}$$

Performs element-by-element subtraction or the negation of all elements, depending on context.

***** Matrix multiplication or multiplication

$$y = x * z;$$

When z has the same number of rows as x has columns, this will perform matrix multiplication (inner product). If x or z are scalar, this performs standard element-by-element multiplication.

/ Division or linear equation solution

$$x = b / A;$$

If A and b are scalars, this performs standard division. If one of the operands is a matrix and the other is scalar, the result is a matrix the same size with the results of the divisions between the scalar and the corresponding elements of the matrix. Use `./` for element-by-element division of matrices.

If b and A are conformable, this operator solves the linear matrix equation

$$Ax = b$$

Linear equation solution is performed in the following cases:

- If A is a square matrix and has the same number of rows as b , this statement will solve the system of linear equations using an LU decomposition.
- If A is rectangular with the same number of rows as b , this statement will produce the least squares solutions by forming the normal equations and using the Cholesky decomposition to get the solution:

$$x = \frac{A'b}{A'A}$$

If **trap** 2 is set, missing values will be handled with pairwise deletion.

% Modulo division

$$y = x \%z;$$

For integers, this returns the integer value that is the remainder of the integer division of x by z . If x or z is noninteger, it will first be rounded to the nearest integer. This is an element-by-element operator.

! Factorial

$$y = x!;$$

Computes the factorial of every element in the matrix x . Nonintegers are rounded to the nearest integer before the factorial operator is applied. This will not work with complex matrices. If x is complex, a fatal error will be generated.

.* Element-by-element multiplication

$$y = x .* z;$$

If x is a column vector, and z is a row vector (or vice versa), the “outer product” or “table” of the two will be computed. (For conformability rules, see [ELEMENT-BY-ELEMENT OPERATORS](#), Section 7.1.)

./ Element-by-element division

$$y = x ./ z;$$

^ Element-by-element exponentiation

$$y = x^z;$$

If x is negative, z must be an integer.

.^ Same as ^

.*. Kronecker (tensor) product

```
y = x .* z;
```

This results in a matrix in which every element in x has been multiplied (scalar multiplication) by the matrix z . For example:

```
x = { 1 2,
      3 4 };
```

```
z = { 4 5 6,
      7 8 9 };
```

```
y = x .* z;
```

```
x =  1  2
     3  4
```

```
z =  4  5  6
     7  8  9
```

```
      4  5  6  8 10 12
y =  7  8  9 14 16 18
    12 15 18 16 20 24
    21 24 27 28 32 36
```

*~ Horizontal direct product

```
z = x *~ y;
```

```
x =  1  2
     3  4
```

```
y =  5  6
     7  8
```

```
z =  5  6 10 12
    21 24 28 32
```

The input matrices x and y must have the same number of rows. The result will have **cols(x) * cols(y)** columns.

7.2.2 Other Matrix Operators

- / Transpose operator

$$y = x';$$

The columns of y will contain the same values as the rows of x and the rows of y will contain the same values as the columns of x . For complex matrices this computes the complex conjugate transpose.

If an operand immediately follows the transpose operator, the $'$ will be interpreted as $'*$. Thus $y = x'x$ is equivalent to $y = x'*x$.

- .' Bookkeeping transpose operator

$$y = x.';$$

This is provided primarily as a matrix handling tool for complex matrices. For all matrices, the columns of y will contain the same values as the rows of x and the rows of y will contain the same values as the columns of x . The complex conjugate transpose is NOT computed when you use $.'$.

If an operand immediately follows the bookkeeping transpose operator, the $.'$ will be interpreted as $.*$. Thus $y = x.'x$ is equivalent to $y = x.*x$.

- | Vertical concatenation

$$z = x|y;$$

$$x = \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array}$$

$$y = \begin{array}{ccc} 7 & 8 & 9 \end{array}$$

$$z = \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{array}$$

~ Horizontal concatenation

$$z = x \sim y;$$

$$x = \begin{array}{cc} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{array}$$

$$y = \begin{array}{cc} 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 \end{array}$$

$$z = \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & 4 & 7 & 8 \end{array}$$

7.3 Relational Operators

For details on how matrix conformability is defined for element-by-element operators, see **ELEMENT-BY-ELEMENT OPERATORS**, Section [7.1](#)

Each of these operators has two equivalent representations. Either can be used (for example, **<** or **lt**), depending only upon preference. The alphabetic form should be surrounded by spaces.

A third form of these operators has a **'\$'** and is used for comparisons between character data and for comparisons between strings or string arrays. The comparisons are done byte by byte starting with the lowest addressed byte of the elements being compared.

The equality comparison operators (**<=**, **=**, **>=**, **/=**) and their dot equivalents can be used to test for missing values and the NaN that is created by floating point exceptions. Less than and greater than comparisons are not meaningful with missings or NaN's, but equal and not equal are valid. These operators are sign-insensitive for missings, NaN's, and zeros.

The string **'\$'** versions of these operators can also be used to test missings, NaN's and zeros. Because they do a strict byte-to-byte comparison, they are sensitive to the sign bit. Missings, NaN's, and zeros can all have the sign bit set to 0 or 1, depending on how they were generated and have been used in a program.

If the relational operator is NOT preceded by a dot '.', then the result is always a scalar 1 or 0, based upon a comparison of all elements of x and y . All comparisons must be true for the relational operator to return TRUE.

By this definition, then

```
if x /= y;
```

is interpreted as: "if every element of x is not equal to the corresponding element of y ". To check if two matrices are not identical, use

```
if not x == y;
```

For complex matrices, the `==`, `/=`, `.*=` and `./=` operators compare both the real and imaginary parts of the matrices; all other relational operators compare only the real parts.

- Less than

```
z = x < y;
```

```
z = x lt y;
```

```
z = x $< y;
```

- Less than or equal to

```
z = x <= y;
```

```
z = x le y;
```

```
z = x $<= y;
```

- Equal to

```
z = x == y;
```

```
z = x eq y;
```

```
z = x $== y;
```

- Not equal

```
z = x /= y;
```

```
z = x ne y;
```

```
z = x $/= y;
```

- Greater than or equal to

```
z = x >= y;
```

```
z = x ge y;
```

```
z = x $>= y;
```

- Greater than

```
z = x > y;
```

```
z = x gt y;
```

```
z = x $> y;
```

If the relational operator IS preceded by a dot '.', then the result will be a matrix of 1's and 0's, based upon an element-by-element comparison of x and y .

- Element-by-element less than

```
z = x .< y;
```

```
z = x .lt y;
```

```
z = x .$< y;
```

- Element-by-element less than or equal to

$z = x \text{ .<= } y;$

$z = x \text{ .le } y;$

$z = x \text{ .\$<= } y;$

- Element-by-element equal to

$z = x \text{ .== } y;$

$z = x \text{ .eq } y;$

$z = x \text{ .\$== } y;$

- Element-by-element not equal to

$z = x \text{ ./= } y;$

$z = x \text{ .ne } y;$

$z = x \text{ .\$/= } y;$

- Element-by-element greater than or equal to

$z = x \text{ .>= } y;$

$z = x \text{ .ge } y;$

$z = x \text{ .\$>= } y;$

- Element-by-element greater than

$z = x \text{ .> } y;$

$z = x \text{ .gt } y;$

$z = x \text{ .\$> } y;$

7.4 Logical Operators

The logical operators perform logical or Boolean operations on numeric values. On input a nonzero value is considered TRUE and a zero value is considered FALSE. The logical operators return a 1 if TRUE and a 0 if FALSE. Decisions are based on the following truth tables:

Complement

<i>X</i>	not <i>X</i>
T	F
F	T

Conjunction

<i>X</i>	<i>Y</i>	<i>X and Y</i>
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

Disjunction

<i>X</i>	<i>Y</i>	<i>X or Y</i>
T	T	T
T	F	T
F	T	T
F	F	F

Exclusive Or

X	Y	$X \text{ xor } Y$
T	T	F
T	F	T
F	T	T
F	F	F

Equivalence

X	Y	$X \text{ eqv } Y$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	T

For complex matrices, the logical operators consider only the real part of the matrices.

The following operators require scalar arguments. These are the ones to use in **if** and **do** statements:

- Complement

$$z = \text{not } x;$$

- Conjunction

$$z = x \text{ and } y;$$

- Disjunction

$$z = x \text{ or } y;$$

- Exclusive or

$$z = x \text{ xor } y;$$

- Equivalence

$$z = x \text{ eqv } y;$$

If the logical operator is preceded by a dot '.', the result will be a matrix of 1's and 0's based upon an element-by-element logical comparison of x and y :

- Element-by-element logical complement

$$z = \text{.not } x;$$

- Element-by-element conjunction

$$z = x \text{ .and } y;$$

- Element-by-element disjunction

$$z = x \text{ .or } y;$$

- Element-by-element exclusive or

$$z = x \text{ .xor } y;$$

- Element-by-element equivalence

$$z = x \text{ .eqv } y;$$

7.5 Other Operators

Assignment Operator

Assignments are done with one equal sign:

$$y = 3;$$

Comma

Commas are used to delimit lists:

```
clear x,y,z;
```

to separate row indices from column indices within brackets:

```
y = x[3,5];
```

and to separate arguments of functions within parentheses:

```
y = momentd(x,d);
```

Period

Dots are used in brackets to signify “all rows” or “all columns”:

```
y = x[.,5];
```

Space

Spaces are used inside of index brackets to separate indices:

```
y = x[1 3 5,3 5 9];
```

No extraneous spaces are allowed immediately before or after the comma, or immediately after the left bracket or before the right bracket.

Spaces are also used in **print** and **lprint** statements to separate the separate expressions to be printed:

```
print x/2 2*sqrt(x);
```

No extraneous spaces are allowed within expressions in **print** or **lprint** statements unless the expression is enclosed in parentheses:

```
print (x / 2) (2 * sqrt(x));
```

Colon

A colon is used within brackets to create a continuous range of indices:

```
y = x[1:5, .];
```

Ampersand

The (&) ampersand operator will return a pointer to a procedure (**proc**), function (**fn**), or structure (**struct**). It is used when passing procedures or functions to other functions, when indexing procedures, and when initializing structure pointers. (For more information, see INDEXING PROCEDURES, Section 8.5 or STRUCTURE POINTERS, Section 12.2.)

String Concatenation

```
x = "dog";  
y = "cat";  
z = x $+ y;  
print z;
```

```
dogcat
```

If the first argument is of type string, the result will be of type string. If the first argument is of type matrix, the result will be of type matrix. Here are some examples:

```
y = 0 $+ "caterpillar";
```

The result will be a 1×1 matrix containing ‘caterpil’.

```
y = zeros(3,1) $+ "cat";
```

The result will be a 3×1 matrix, each element containing ‘cat’.

If we use the *y* created above in the following:

```
k = y $+ "fish";
```

The result will be a 3×1 matrix with each element containing ‘catfish’.

If we then use *k* created above:

```
t = "" $+ k[1,1];
```

The result will be a string containing ‘catfish’.

If we used the same *k* to create *z* as follows:

```
z = "dog" $+ k[1,1];
```

The resulting *z* will be a string containing ‘dogcatfish’.

String Array Concatenation

\$| Vertical string array concatenation

```
x = "dog";
y = "fish";
k = x $| y;
print k;
```

```
dog
fish
```

\$~ Horizontal string array concatenation

```
x = "dog";
y = "fish";
k = x $~ y;
print k;
```

```
dog      fish
```

String Variable Substitution

In a command like the following:

```
create f1 = olsdat with x,4,2;
```

by default **GAUSS** will interpret **olsdat** as the literal name of the **GAUSS** data file you want to create. It will also interpret **x** as the literal prefix string for the variable names **x1 x2 x3 x4**.

To get the data set name from a string variable, the substitution operator (^) could be used as follows:

```
dataset = "olsdat";
create f1 = ^dataset with x,4,2;
```

To get the data set name from a string variable and the variable names from a character vector, use the following:

```
dataset = "olsdat";  
vnames = { age, pay, sex };  
create f1 = ^dataset with ^vnames,0,2;
```

The general syntax is:

^variable_name

Expressions are not allowed.

The following commands are currently supported with the substitution operator (^) in the current version.

```
create f1 = ^dataset with ^vnames,0,2;  
create f1 = ^dataset using ^cmdfile;  
open f1 = ^dataset;  
output file = ^outfile;  
load x = ^datafile;  
load path = ^lpath x,y,z,t,w;  
loadexe buf = ^exefile;  
save ^name = x;  
save path = ^spath;  
dos ^cmdstr;  
run ^prog;  
msym ^mstring;
```

7.6 Using Dot Operators with Constants

When you use those operators preceded by a ‘.’ (dot operators) with a scalar integer constant, insert a space between the constant and any following dot operator. Otherwise, the dot will be interpreted as part of the scalar; that is, the decimal point. For example:

```
let y = 1 2 3;
x = 2.<y;
```

will return **x** as a scalar 0, not a vector of 0's and 1's, because

```
x = 2.<y;
```

is interpreted as

```
x = 2. < y;
```

and not as

```
x = 2 .< y;
```

Be careful when using the dot relational operators (`.<`, `.<=`, `.==`, `./=`, `.>`, `.>=`). The same problem can occur with other dot operators, also. For example:

```
let x = 1 1 1;
y = x./2./x;
```

will return **y** as a scalar .5 rather than a vector of .5's, because

```
y = x./2./x;
```

is interpreted as

```
y = (x ./ 2.) / x;
```

not

$$y = (x ./ 2) ./ x;$$

The second division, then, is handled as a matrix division rather than an element-by-element division.

7.7 Operator Precedence

The order in which an expression is evaluated is determined by the precedence of the operators involved and the order in which they are used. For example, the * and / operators have a higher precedence than the + and – operators. In expressions that contain the above operators, the operand pairs associated with the * or / operator are evaluated first. Whether * or / is evaluated first depends on which comes first in the particular expression.

The expression

$$-5+3/4+6*3$$

is evaluated as

$$(-5)+(3/4)+(6*3)$$

Within a term, operators of equal precedence are evaluated from left to right. The precedence of all operators, from the highest to the lowest, is listed in the following table:

Operator	Precedence	Operator	Precedence	Operator	Precedence
./	90	.\$>=	65	\$>=	55
/	90	./=	65	/=	55
!	89	.<	65	<	55
.^	85	.<=	65	<=	55
^	85	==	65	==	55
(unary -)	83	.>	65	>	55
*	80	.>=	65	>=	55
*~	80	.eq	65	eq	55
.*	80	.ge	65	ge	55
.*.	80	.gt	65	gt	55
./	80	.le	65	le	55
/	80	.lt	65	lt	55
%	75	.ne	65	ne	55
\$+	70	.not	64	not	49
+	70	.and	63	and	48
-	70	.or	62	or	47
~	68	.xor	61	xor	46
|	67	.eqv	60	eqv	45
.\$/=	65	\$/=	55	(space)	35
.\$<	65	\$<	55	:	35
.\$<=	65	\$<=	55	=	10
.\$==	65	\$==	55		
.\$>	65	\$>	55		

Procedures and Keywords 8

Procedures are multiple-line, recursive functions that can have either local or global variables. Procedures allow a large computing task to be written as a collection of smaller tasks. These smaller tasks are easier to work with and keep the details of their operation from the other parts of the program that do not need to know them. This makes programs easier to understand and easier to maintain.

A procedure in **GAUSS** is basically a user-defined function that can be used as if it were an intrinsic part of the language. A procedure can be as small and simple or as large and complicated as necessary to perform a particular task. Procedures allow you to build on your previous work and on the work of others rather than starting over again and again to perform related tasks.

Any intrinsic command or function may be used in a procedure, as well as any user-defined function or other procedure. Procedures can refer to any global variable; that is, any variable in the global symbol table that can be shown with the **show** command. It is also possible to declare local variables within a procedure. These variables are known only inside the procedure they are defined in and cannot be accessed from other procedures or from the main level program code.

All labels and subroutines inside a procedure are local to that procedure and will not be confused with labels of the same name in other procedures.

8.1 Defining a Procedure

A procedure definition consists of five parts, four of which are denoted by explicit **GAUSS** commands:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Procedure declaration | proc statement |
| 2. Local variable declaration | local statement |
| 3. Body of procedure | |
| 4. Return from procedure | retp statement |
| 5. End of procedure definition | endp statement |

There is always one **proc** statement and one **endp** statement in a procedure definition. Any statements that come between these two statements are part of the procedure. Procedure definitions cannot be nested. **local** and **retp** statements are optional. There can be multiple **local** and **retp** statements in a procedure definition. Here is an example:

```
proc (3) = regress(x, y);  
    local xxi,b,ymxb,sse,sd,t;  
    xxi = invpd(x'x);  
    b = xxi * (x'y);  
    ymxb = y-xb;  
    sse = ymxb'ymxb/(rows(x)-cols(x));  
    sd = sqrt(diag(sse*xxi));  
    t = b./sd;  
    retp(b,sd,t);  
endp;
```

This could be used as a function that takes two matrix arguments and returns three matrices as a result. For example: is:

```
{ b,sd,t } = regress(x,y);
```

Following is a discussion of the five parts of a procedure definition.

8.1.1 Procedure Declaration

The **proc** statement is the procedure declaration statement. The format is:

```
proc [(rets) =] name([arg1,arg2,...argN]);
```

<i>rets</i>	Optional constant, number of values returned by the procedure. Acceptable values here are 0-1023; the default is 1.
<i>name</i>	Name of the procedure, up to 32 alphanumeric characters or an underscore, beginning with an alpha or an underscore.
<i>arg#</i>	Names that will be used inside the procedure for the arguments that are passed to the procedure when it is called. There can be 0-1023 arguments. These names will be known only in the procedure being defined. Other procedures can use the same names, but they will be separate entities.

8.1.2 Local Variable Declarations

The **local** statement is used to declare local variables. Local variables are variables known only to the procedure being defined. The names used in the argument list of the **proc** statement are always local. The format of the **local** statement is:

```
local x,y,f:proc,g:fn,z,h:keyword;
```

Local variables can be matrices or strings. If **:proc**, **:fn**, or **:keyword** follows the variable name in the **local** statement, the compiler will treat the symbol as if it were a procedure, function, or keyword respectively. This allows passing procedures, functions, and keywords to other procedures. (For more information, see [PASSING PROCEDURES TO PROCEDURES](#), Section 8.4.

Variables that are global to the system (that is, variables listed in the global symbol table that can be shown with the **show** command) can be accessed by any procedure without any redundant declaration inside the procedure. If you want to create variables known only to the procedure

being defined, the names of these local variables must be listed in a **local** statement. Once a variable name is encountered in a **local** statement, further references to that name inside the procedure will be to the local rather than to a global having the same name. (See **clearg**, **varget**, and **varput** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE for ways of accessing globals from within procedures that have locals with the same name.)

The **local** statement does not initialize (set to a value) the local variables. If they are not passed in as parameters, they must be assigned some value before they are accessed or the program will terminate with a **Variable not initialized** error message.

All local and global variables are dynamically allocated and sized automatically during execution. Local variables, including those that were passed as parameters, can change in size during the execution of the procedure.

Local variables exist only when the procedure is executing and then disappear. Local variables cannot be listed with the **show** command.

The maximum number of locals is limited by stack space and the size of workspace memory. The limiting factor applies to the total number of active local symbols at any one time during execution. If **cat** has 10 locals and it calls **dog** which has 20 locals, there are 30 active locals whenever **cat** is called.

There can be multiple **local** statements in a procedure. They will affect only the code in the procedure that follows. Therefore, for example, it is possible to refer to a global **x** in a procedure and follow that with a **local** statement that declares a local **x**. All subsequent references to **x** would be to the local **x**. (This is not good programming practice, but it demonstrates the principle that the **local** statement affects only the code that is physically below it in the procedure definition.) Another example is a symbol that is declared as a local and then declared as a local procedure or function later in the same procedure definition. This allows doing arithmetic on local function pointers before calling them. (For more information, see INDEXING PROCEDURES, Section 8.5.)

8.1.3 Body of Procedure

The body of the procedure can have any **GAUSS** statements necessary to perform the task the procedure is being written for. Other user-defined functions and other procedures can be referenced as well as any global matrices and strings.

GAUSS procedures are recursive, so the procedure can call itself as long as there is logic in the procedure to prevent an infinite recursion. The process would otherwise terminate with either an **Insufficient workspace memory** message or a **Procedure calls too deep** message, depending on the space necessary to store the locals for each separate invocation of the procedure.

8.1.4 Returning from the Procedure

The return from the procedure is accomplished with the **retp** statement:

```
retp;
```

```
retp(expression1, expression2, ..., expressionN);
```

The **retp** statement can have multiple arguments. The number of items returned must coincide with the number of *rets* in the **proc** statement.

If the procedure was defined with no items returned, the **retp** statement is optional. The **endp** statement that ends the procedure will generate an implicit **retp** with no objects returned. If the procedure returns one or more objects, there must be an explicit **retp** statement.

There can be multiple **retp** statements in a procedure, and they can be anywhere inside the body of the procedure.

8.1.5 End of Procedure Definition

The **endp** statement marks the end of the procedure definition:

```
endp;
```

An implicit **retp** statement that returns nothing is always generated here so it is impossible to run off the end of a procedure without returning. If the procedure was defined to return one or more objects, executing this implicit return will result in a **Wrong number of returns** error message and the program will terminate.

8.2 Calling a Procedure

Procedures are called like this:

```
dog(i,j,k);                /* no returns */  
  
y = cat(i,j,k);            /* one return */  
  
{ x,y,z } = bat(i,j,k);    /* multiple returns */  
  
call bat(i,j,k);           /* ignore any returns */
```

Procedures are called in the same way that intrinsic functions are called. The procedure name is followed by a list of arguments in parentheses. The arguments must be separated by commas.

If there is to be no return value, use

```
proc (0) = dog(x,y,z);
```

when defining the procedure and use

```
dog(ak,4,3);
```

or

```
call dog(ak,4,3);
```

when calling it.

The arguments passed to procedures can be complicated expressions involving calls to other functions and procedures. This calling mechanism is completely general. For example,

```
y = dog(cat(3*x,bird(x,y))-2,2,1);
```

is legal.

8.3 Keywords

A keyword, like a procedure, is a subroutine that can be called interactively or from within a **GAUSS** program. A keyword differs from a procedure in that a keyword accepts exactly one string argument, and returns nothing. Keywords can perform many tasks not as easily accomplished with procedures.

8.3.1 Defining a Keyword

A keyword definition is much like a procedure definition. Keywords always are defined with 0 returns and 1 argument. The beginning of a keyword definition is the **keyword** statement:

```
keyword name(strarg);
```

name Name of the keyword, up to 32 alphanumeric characters or an underscore, beginning with an alpha or an underscore.

strarg Name that will be used inside of the keyword for the argument that is passed to the keyword when it is called. There is always one argument. The name is known only in the keyword being defined. Other keywords can use the same name, but they will be separate entities. This will always be a string. If the keyword is called with no characters following the name of the keyword, this will be a null string.

The rest of the keyword definition is the same as a procedure definition. (For more information, see **DEFINING A PROCEDURE**, Section 8.1. Keywords always return nothing. Any **retp** statements, if used, should be empty. For example:

```
keyword add(s);
    local tok, sum;

    if s $=\,,= "";
        print "The argument is a null string";
        retp;
    endif;

    print "The argument is: '" s "'";

    sum = 0;
    do until s $=\,,= "";
        { tok, s } = token(s);
        sum = sum + stof(tok);
    endo;
    format /rd 1,2;
    print "The sum is:      " sum;
endp;
```

The keyword defined above will print the string argument passed to it. The argument will be printed enclosed in single quotes.

8.3.2 Calling a Keyword

When a keyword is called, every character up to the end of the statement, excluding the leading spaces, is passed to the keyword as one string argument. For example, if you type

```
add 1 2 3 4 5;
```

the keyword will respond

```
The sum is:  15.00
```

Here is another example:

```
add;
```

the keyword will respond

```
The argument is a null string
```

8.4 Passing Procedures to Procedures

Procedures and functions can be passed to procedures in the following way:

```
proc max(x,y); /* procedure to return maximum */
  if x>y;
    retp(x);
  else;
    retp(y);
  endif;
endp;

proc min(x,y); /* procedure to return minimum */
  if x<y;
    retp(x);
  else;
    retp(y);
  endif;
endp;

fn lgsqrt(x) = ln(sqrt(x)); /* function to return
                             :: log of square root
                             */
```

```
proc myproc(&f1,&f2,x,y);  
    local f1:proc, f2:fn, z;  
    z = f1(x,y);  
    retp(f2(z));  
endp;
```

The procedure **myproc** takes four arguments. The first is a procedure **f1** that has two arguments. The second is a function **f2** that has one argument. It also has two other arguments that must be matrices or scalars. In the **local** statement, **f1** is declared to be a procedure and **f2** is declared to be a function. They can be used inside the procedure in the usual way. **f1** will be interpreted as a procedure inside **myproc**, and **f2** will be interpreted as a function. The call to **myproc** is made as follows:

```
k = myproc(&max,&lgsqrt,5,7); /* log of square root of 7 */  
  
k = myproc(&min,&lgsqrt,5,7); /* log of square root of 5 */
```

The ampersand (&) in front of the function or procedure name in the call to **myproc** causes a pointer to the function or procedure to be passed. No argument list should follow the name when it is preceded by the ampersand.

Inside **myproc**, the symbol that is declared as a procedure in the **local** statement is assumed to contain a pointer to a procedure. It can be called exactly like a procedure is called. It cannot be **save**'d but it can be passed on to another procedure. If it is to be passed on to another procedure, use the ampersand in the same way.

8.5 Indexing Procedures

This example assumes there are a set of procedures named **f1-f5** that are already defined. A 1×5 vector **procvec** is defined by horizontally concatenating pointers to these procedures. A new procedure, **g(x,i)** is then defined to return the value of the i^{th} procedure evaluated at x :

```
procvec = &f1 ~ &f2 ~ &f3 ~ &f4 ~ &f5;
```

```

proc g(x,i);
    local f;
    f = procvec[i];
    local f:proc;
    retp( f(x) );
endp;

```

The **local** statement is used twice. The first time, **f** is declared to be a local matrix. After **f** has been set equal to the i^{th} pointer, **f** is declared to be a procedure and is called as a procedure in the **retp** statement.

8.6 Multiple Returns from Procedures

Procedures can return multiple items, up to 1023. The procedure is defined like this example of a complex inverse:

```

proc (2) = cminv(xr,xi); /* (2) specifies number of
                        :: return values
                        */
    local ixy, zr, zi;
    ixy = inv(xr)*xi;
    zr = inv(xr+xi*ixy); /* real part of inverse. */
    zi = -ixy*zr;        /* imaginary part of inverse. */
    retp(zr,zi);        /* return: real part, imaginary part */
endp;

```

It can then be called like this:

```
{ zr,zi } = cminv(xr,xi);
```

To make the assignment, the list of targets must be enclosed in braces.

Also, a procedure that returns more than one argument can be used as input to another procedure or function that takes more than one argument:

```
proc (2) = cminv(xr,xi);
    local ixy, zr, zi;
    ixy = inv(xr)*xi;
    zr = inv(xr+xi*ixy); /* real part of inverse. */
    zi = -ixy*zr;        /* imaginary part of inverse. */
    retp(zr,zi);
endp;

proc (2) = cmmult(xr,xi,yr,yi);
    local zr,zi;
    zr = xr*yr-xi*yi;
    zi = xr*yi+xi*yr;
    retp(zr,zi);
endp;

{ zr,zi } = cminv( cmmult(xr,xi,yr,yi) );
```

The two returned matrices from **cmmult()** are passed directly to **cminv()** in the statement above. This is equivalent to the following statements:

```
{ tr,ti } = cmmult(xr,xi,yr,yi);
{ zr,zi } = cminv(tr,ti);
```

This is completely general so the following program is legal:

```
proc (2) = cmcplx(x);
    local r,c;
    r = rows(x);
    c = cols(x);
    retp(x,zeros(r,c));
endp;
```

```

proc (2) = cminv(xr,xi);
    local ixy, zr, zi;
    ixy = inv(xr)*xi;
    zr = inv(xr+xi*ixy); /* real part of inverse. */
    zi = -ixy*zr;        /* imaginary part of inverse. */
    retp(zr,zi);
endp;

proc (2) = cmmult(xr,xi,yr,yi);
    local zr,zi;
    zr = xr*yr-xi*yi;
    zi = xr*yi+xi*yr;
    retp(zr,zi);
endp;

{ xr,xi } = cmcplx(rndn(3,3));
{ yr,yi } = cmcplx(rndn(3,3));

{ zr,zi } = cmmult( cminv(xr,xi),cminv(yr,yi) );
{ qr,qi } = cmmult( yr,yi,cminv(yr,yi) );

{ wr,wi } = cmmult(yr,yi,cminv(cmmult(cminv(xr,xi),yr,yi)));

```

8.7 Saving Compiled Procedures

When a file containing a procedure definition is run, the procedure is compiled and is then resident in memory. The procedure can be called as if it were an intrinsic function. If the **new** command is executed or you quit **GAUSS** and exit to the operating system, the compiled image of the procedure disappears and the file containing the procedure definition will have to be compiled again.

If a procedure contains no global references, that is, if it does not reference any global matrices or strings and it does not call any user-defined functions or procedures, it can be saved to disk in compiled form in a **.fcg** file with the **save** command, and loaded later with the **loadp** command

whenever it is needed. This will usually be faster than recompiling. For example:

```
save path = c:\gauss\cp proc1,proc2,proc3;
```

```
loadp path = c:\gauss\cp proc1,proc2,proc3;
```

The name of the file will be the same as the name of the procedure, with a .fcg extension. (For details, see **loadp** and **save** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

All compiled procedures should be saved in the same subdirectory, so there is no question where they are located when it is necessary to reload them. The **loadp** path can be set in your startup file to reflect this. Then, to load in procedures, use

```
loadp proc1,proc2,proc3;
```

Procedures that are saved in .fcg files will NOT be automatically loaded. It is necessary to explicitly load them with **loadp**. This feature should be used only when the time necessary for the autoloader to compile the source is too great. Also, unless these procedures have been compiled with **#lineson**, debugging will be more complicated.

Sparse Matrices 9

The sparse matrix data type stores only the non-zero values of a 2-dimensional sparse matrix, which makes working with sparse matrices faster and more efficient.

9.1 Defining Sparse Matrices

The sparse matrix data type is strongly typed in **GAUSS**, which means that a variable must be defined as a sparse matrix variable before it may be used as such. Once a variable has been defined as a sparse matrix, it may not be used as another data type. Similarly, once a variable has been used as a matrix, array, or other non-sparse data type, it may not be redefined as a sparse matrix.

To define a global sparse matrix, you may use either the **declare** or the **let** command:

```
declare sparse matrix sm1;
```

```
let sparse matrix sm1;
```

or the following implicit **let** statement:

```
sparse matrix sm1;
```

declare may be used to define multiple sparse matrices in a single statement:

```
declare sparse matrix sm1, sm2, sm3;
```

To define a local sparse matrix inside of a procedure, use an implicit let statement:

```
sparse matrix lsm1;
```

As neither **let** nor **declare** support the initialization of a sparse matrix at this time, you must initialize a sparse matrix with an assignment after defining it.

9.2 Creating and Using Sparse Matrices

Several new functions have been added to allow you to create and manipulate sparse matrices. These functions are:

denseToSp	Converts a dense matrix to a sparse matrix.
denseToSpRE	Converts a dense matrix to a sparse matrix, using a relative epsilon.
packedToSp	Creates a sparse matrix from a packed matrix of non-zero values and row and column indices.
spBiconjGradSol	Solves the system of linear equations $Ax=b$ using the biconjugate gradient method.
spConjGradSol	Solves the system of linear equations $Ax=b$ for symmetric matrices using the conjugate gradient method.

spCreate	Creates a sparse matrix from vectors of non-zero values, row indices, and column indices.
spDenseSubmat	Returns a dense submatrix of sparse matrix.
spDiagRvMat	Inserts submatrices along the diagonal of a sparse matrix.
spEigv	Computes a specified number of eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a square, sparse matrix.
spEye	Creates a sparse identity matrix.
spGetNZE	Returns the non-zero values in a sparse matrix, as well as their corresponding row and column indices.
spLDL	Computes the LDL decomposition of a symmetric sparse matrix.
spLU	Computes the LU decomposition of a sparse matrix with partial pivoting.
spNumNZE	Returns the number of non-zero elements in a sparse matrix.
spOnes	Generates a sparse matrix containing only ones and zeros
spSubmat	Returns a sparse submatrix of sparse matrix.
spToDense	Converts a sparse matrix to a dense matrix.
spTrTDense	Multiplies a sparse matrix transposed by a dense matrix.
spTScalar	Multiplies a sparse matrix by a scalar.
spZeros	Creates a sparse matrix containing no non-zero values.

See [COMMAND REFERENCE](#), Chapter 29, for detailed information on each command.

9.3 Sparse Support in Matrix Functions and Operators

Support for the sparse matrix data type has also been added to many matrix functions and operators. The following is a complete list of the matrix functions and operators that currently support the new sparse matrix type:

,	./=	.<=
~	==	abs
|	===	cols
*	>	maxc
.*	.>	minc
+	>=	print
-	.>=	rows
/	<	scalerr
./	.<	show
/=	<=	type

Indexing is also supported for sparse matrices, using the same syntax as matrix indexing.

Note that **printing** a sparse matrix results in a table of the non-zero values contained in the sparse matrix, followed by their corresponding row and column indices, respectively.

9.3.1 Return Types for Dyadic Operators

The types of the returns for the dyadic operators were decided on a case-by-case basis, using the following general principles:

- 1. The return type for dyadic operations on two dense arguments is always dense.
- 2. The return type for dyadic operations on two sparse arguments is always sparse unless the result is likely to be significantly less sparse than the sparse arguments.
- 3. The return type for dyadic operations on a dense argument and a sparse argument (regardless of order) is dense unless the return is likely to be at least as sparse as the sparse argument.

These general principles have led to the following decisions regarding return types (note that only the cases that are displayed in these tables have been implemented at this point):

Element-by-Element Numeric Operators

Element-by-Element Addition				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
dense	=	sparse	+	dense
dense	=	dense	+	dense
sparse	=	sparse	+	sparse
dense	=	dense	+	sparse

Element-by-Element Subtraction				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
dense	=	sparse	-	dense
dense	=	dense	-	dense
sparse	=	sparse	-	sparse
dense	=	dense	-	sparse

Element-by-Element Multiplication				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
sparse	=	sparse	.*	dense
dense	=	dense	.*	dense
sparse	=	sparse	.*	sparse
sparse	=	dense	.*	sparse

Element-by-Element Division				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
sparse	=	sparse	./	dense
dense	=	dense	./	dense
dense	=	sparse	./	sparse
dense	=	dense	./	sparse

Other Numeric Operators

Matrix Multiplication				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
dense	=	sparse	*	dense
dense	=	dense	*	dense
sparse	=	sparse	*	sparse

Linear Solve				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
dense	=	dense	/	dense
dense	=	dense	/	sparse

Note that at this time, the dense = dense / sparse case is defined only for real data.

When either of its arguments are sparse, the / operator uses a tolerance to determine the result, which may be read or set using the **sysstate** function, case 39. The default tolerance is 1e-14.

Relational Operators

Since the results of element-by-element 'dot' comparison operators depend largely on the kind of data inputted, there are both both dense-returning and sparse-returning versions of the dot comparison operators when one or both arguments is a sparse matrix. The regular dot comparison operators and their alphabetic counterparts always return dense matrices, and there is a new set of alphabetic dot comparison operators that all return sparse matrices:

Element-by-Element Dot Comparison Operators			
Operation	Dense-Returning		Sparse-Returning
Equal to	.==	.eq	.speq
Not equal to	./=	.ne	.spne
Less than	.<	.lt	.splt
Less than or equal to	.<=	.le	.sple
Greater than	.>	.gt	.spgt
Greater than or equal to	.>=	.ge	.spge

Since the element-by-element 'non-dot' comparison operators ($=$, \neq , $<$, \leq , $>$, \geq) and their alphabetic counterparts (eq, ne, lt, le, gt, ge) all return scalars, there are no sparse-returning versions of them.

Other Matrix Operators

Horizontal Concatenation				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
dense	=	dense	\sim	dense
sparse	=	sparse	\sim	sparse

Vertical Concatenation				
Result	=	Left	Operator	Right
dense	=	dense	|	dense
sparse	=	sparse	|	sparse

N-Dimensional Arrays 10

In **GAUSS**, internally, matrices and arrays are separate data types. Matrices, which are 2-dimensional objects, are stored in memory in row major order. Therefore, a 3×2 matrix is stored as follows:

[1, 1] [1, 2] [2, 1] [2, 2] [3, 1] [3, 2]

The slowest moving dimension in memory is indexed on the right, and the fastest moving dimension is indexed on the left. This is true of N-dimensional arrays as well. A $4 \times 3 \times 2$ array is stored in the following way:

[1, 1, 1] [1, 1, 2] [1, 2, 1] [1, 2, 2] [1, 3, 1] [1, 3, 2]
[2, 1, 1] [2, 1, 2] [2, 2, 1] [2, 2, 2] [2, 3, 1] [2, 3, 2]
[3, 1, 1] [3, 1, 2] [3, 2, 1] [3, 2, 2] [3, 3, 1] [3, 3, 2]
[4, 1, 1] [4, 1, 2] [4, 2, 1] [4, 2, 2] [4, 3, 1] [4, 3, 2]

A complex N-dimensional array is stored in memory in the same way. Like complex matrices, complex arrays are stored with the entire real part first, followed by the entire imaginary part.

Every N-dimensional array has a corresponding $N \times 1$ vector of orders that contains the sizes of each dimension of the array. This is stored with the array and can be accessed with **getorders**. The first element of the vector of orders corresponds to the slowest moving dimension, and the last element corresponds to the fastest moving dimension (refer to the [sectionnameGlossary of Terms](#) at the end of the chapter for clear definitions of these terms). The vector of orders for a $6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2$ array, which has 5 dimensions, is the following 5×1 vector:

6
5
4
3
2

Two terms that are important in working with N-dimensional arrays are “dimension index” and “dimension number.” A dimension index specifies a dimension based on indexing the vector of orders. It is a scalar, 1-to-N, where 1 corresponds to the dimension indicated by the first element of the vector of orders of the array (the slowest moving dimension) and N corresponds to the dimension indicated by the last element of the vector of orders (the fastest moving dimension).

A dimension number specifies dimensions by numbering them in the same order that one would add dimensions to an array. In other words, the dimensions of an N-dimensional array are numbered such that the fastest moving dimension has a dimension number of 1, and the slowest moving dimension has a dimension number of N.

A $6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2$ array has 5 dimensions, so the first element of the vector of orders (in this case, 6) refers to the size of dimension number 5. Since the index of this element in the vector of orders is 1, the dimension index of the corresponding dimension (dimension number 5) is also 1.

You will find references to both dimension index and dimension number in the documentation for the functions that manipulate arrays.

There are a number of functions that have been designed to manipulate arrays. These functions allow you to manipulate a subarray within the array by passing in a locator vector to index any subarray that comprises a contiguous block of memory within the larger block. A vector of indices of an N-dimensional array is a $[1\text{-to-}N] \times 1$ vector of base 1 indices into the array, where the first element corresponds to the first element in a vector of orders. An $N \times 1$ vector of indices locates the

scalar whose position is indicated by the indices. For a $4 \times 3 \times 2$ array x , the 3×1 vector of indices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

indexes the $[3, 2, 1]$ element of x . A 2×1 vector of indices for this 3-dimensional example, references the 1-dimensional array whose starting location is given by the indices.

Because the elements of the vector of indices are always in the same order (the first element of the vector of indices corresponds to the slowest moving dimension of the array, the second element to the second slowest moving dimension, and so on), each unique vector of indices locates a unique subarray.

In general, an $[N-K] \times 1$ vector of indices locates a K -dimensional subarray that begins at the position indicated by the indices. The sizes of the dimensions of the K -dimensional subarray correspond to the last K elements of the vector of orders of the N -dimensional array. For a $6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2$ array y , the 2×1 vector of indices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

locates the $4 \times 3 \times 2$ subarray in y that begins at $[2, 5, 1, 1, 1]$ and ends at $[2, 5, 4, 3, 2]$.

10.1 Bracketed Indexing

Brackets ' $[]$ ' can be used to index N -dimensional arrays in virtually the same way that they are used to index matrices. Bracketed indexing is slower than the convenience array functions, such as **getarray** and **setarray**; however, it can be used to index non-contiguous elements. In order to index an N -dimensional array with brackets, there must be N indices located within the brackets, where the first index corresponds to the slowest moving dimension of the array and the last index corresponds to the fastest moving dimension.

For a $2 \times 3 \times 4$ array **x**, such that

[1,1,1] through [1,3,4] =

1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12

[2,1,1] through [2,3,4] =

13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24

x[1,2,3] returns a $1 \times 1 \times 1$ array containing the [1,2,3] element of **x**:

7

x[.,3,2] returns a $2 \times 1 \times 1$ array containing

10

22

x[2,.,1 4] returns a $1 \times 3 \times 2$ array containing

13	16
17	20
21	24

`x[:,2,1:3]` returns a $2 \times 1 \times 3$ array containing

```

5   6   7
17  18  19

```

10.2 E×E Conformability

The following describes rules for E×E conformability of arrays for operators and functions with two or more arguments.

- Any N-dimensional array is conformable to a scalar.
- An array is conformable to a matrix only if the array has fewer than 3 dimensions, and the array and matrix follow the standard rules of E×E conformability.
- Two arrays are E×E conformable if they comply with one of the following requirements:
 - The two arrays have the same number of dimensions, and each dimension has the same size.
 - The two arrays have the same number of dimensions, and each of the N-2 slowest moving dimensions has the same size. In this case, the 2 fastest moving dimensions of the arrays must follow the E×E conformability rules that apply to matrices.
 - Both of the arrays have fewer than 3 dimensions, and they follow the E×E conformability rules that apply to matrices.

10.3 Glossary of Terms

dimensions The number of dimensions of an object.

vector of orders $N \times 1$ vector of the sizes of the dimensions of an object, where N is the number of dimensions, and the first element corresponds to the slowest moving dimension.

vector of indices [1-to-N]×1 vector of indices into an array, where the first element corresponds to the first element in a vector of orders.

dimension number Scalar [1-to-N], where 1 corresponds to the fastest moving dimension and N to the slowest moving dimension.

dimension index Scalar [1-to-N], where 1 corresponds to the first element of the vector of orders or vector of indices.

locator [1-to-N]×1 vector of indices into an array used by array functions to locate a contiguous block of the array.

Working with Arrays 11

11.1 Initializing Arrays

The use of N-dimensional arrays in **GAUSS** is an additional tool for reducing development time and increasing execution speed of programs. There are multiple ways of handling N-dimensional arrays and using them to solve problems, and these ways sometimes have implications for a trade-off between speed of execution and development time. We will try to make this clear in this chapter.

The term “arrays” specifically refers to N-dimensional arrays and must not be confused with matrices. Matrices and arrays are distinct types even if in fact they contain identical information. Functions for conversion from one to the other are described below.

There are five basic ways of creating an array depending on how the contents are specified:

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| areshape | Create array from specified matrix . |
| aconcat | Create array from matrices and arrays. |
| aeye | Create array of identity matrices. |

arrayinit Allocate array filled with specified scalar value.

arrayalloc Allocate array with no specified contents.

11.1.1 areshape

areshape is a method for creating an array with specified contents. **arrayinit** creates an array filled with a selected scalar value: **areshape** will do the same, but with a matrix. For example, given a matrix, **areshape** will create an array containing multiple copies of that matrix:

```
x = reshape(seqa(1,1,4),2,2);  
ord = 3 | 2 | 2;  
a = areshape(x,ord);  
print a;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
1.0000 2.0000  
3.0000 4.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
1.0000 2.0000  
3.0000 4.0000
```

```
Plane [3,...]
```

```
1.0000 2.0000  
3.0000 4.0000
```

Reading Data from the Disk into an Array

areshape is a fast way to re-dimension a matrix or array already in memory. For example, suppose we have a **GAUSS** data set containing panel data and that it's small enough to be read in all at once:

```

panel = areshape(loadadd("panel"),5|100|10);
mn = amean(panel,2); /* 5x1x10 array of means */
                        /*of each panel */
mm = moment(panel,0); /* 5x10x10 array of moments */
                        /* of each panel */

/*
** vc is a 5x10x10 array of
** covariance matrices
**/

vc = mm / 100 - amult(atranspose(mn,1|3|2),mn);

```

panel is a 5×100×10 array, and in this context is 5 panels of 100 cases measured on 10 variables.

Inserting Random Numbers into Arrays

A random array of any dimension or size can be quickly created using **areshape**. Thus, for a 10×10×5×3 array:

```

ord = { 10, 10, 5, 3 };
y = areshape(rndu(prodc(ord),1),ord);

```

The quick and dirty method above uses the linear congruential generator, which is fast but doesn't have the properties required for serious Monte Carlo work. For series simulation you will need to use the KM generator:

```

sd0 = 345678;
ord = { 10, 10, 5, 3 };
{ z,sd0 } = rndKM(u(prodc(ord),1,sd0));
y = areshape(z,ord);

```

Expanding a Matrix into an Array Vector of Matrices

For computing the log-likelihood of a variance components model of panel data, it is necessary to expand a $T \times T$ matrix into an $NT \times T$ array of these matrices. This is easily accomplished using **areshape**. For example:

```
m = { 1.0 0.3 0.2,
      0.3 1.0 0.1,
      0.2 0.1 1.0 };
```

```
r = areshape(m,3|3|3);
print r;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

1.0000	0.3000	0.2000
0.3000	1.0000	0.1000
0.2000	0.1000	1.0000

```
Plane [2,...]
```

1.0000	0.3000	0.2000
0.3000	1.0000	0.1000
0.2000	0.1000	1.0000

```
Plane [3,...]
```

1.0000	0.3000	0.2000
0.3000	1.0000	0.1000
0.2000	0.1000	1.0000

11.1.2 aconcat

acat creates arrays from conformable sets of matrices or arrays. With this function, contents are completely specified by the user. This example tries three concatenations, one along each

dimension:

```
rndseed 345678;
x1 = rndn(2,2);
x2 = arrayinit(2|2,1);

/*
** along the first dimension or rows
*/

a = aconcat(x1,x2,1);
print a;

    -0.4300 -0.2878 1.0000 1.0000
    -0.1327 -0.0573 1.0000 1.0000

/*
** along the second dimension or columns
*/

a = aconcat(x1,x2,2);
print a;

    -0.4300 -0.2878
    -0.1327 -0.0573
    1.0000  1.0000
    1.0000  1.0000

/*
** along the third dimension
*/

a = aconcat(x1,x2,3);
print a;

Plane [1,...]
```

```
-0.4300 -0.2878  
-0.1327 -0.0573
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
1.0000 1.0000  
1.0000 1.0000
```

11.1.3 aeve

aeve creates an array in which the principal diagonal of the two trailing dimensions is set to one. For example:

```
ord = 2 | 3 | 3;  
a = aeve(ord);  
print a;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
1.00000 0.00000 0.00000  
0.00000 1.00000 0.00000  
0.00000 0.00000 1.00000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
1.00000 0.00000 0.00000  
0.00000 1.00000 0.00000  
0.00000 0.00000 1.00000
```

11.1.4 arrayinit

arrayinit creates an array with all elements set to a specified value. For example:

```
ord = 3 | 2 | 3;
```

```

a = arrayinit(ord,1);
print a;

Plane [1,...]

      1.0000 1.0000 1.0000
      1.0000 1.0000 1.0000

Plane [2,...]

      1.0000 1.0000 1.0000
      1.0000 1.0000 1.0000

Plane [3,...]

      1.0000 1.0000 1.0000
      1.0000 1.0000 1.0000

```

11.1.5 arrayalloc

arrayalloc creates an array with specified number and size of dimensions without setting elements to any values. This requires a vector specifying the order of the array. The length of the vector determines the number of dimensions, and each element determines the size of the corresponding dimensions. The array will then have to be filled using any of several methods described later in this chapter.

For example, to allocate a $2 \times 2 \times 3$ array:

```

rndseed 345678;
ord = 3 | 2 | 2;
a = arrayalloc(ord,0);

for i(1,ord[1],1);
    a[i,...] = rndn(2,3);
endfor;

```

```
print a;

Plane [1,...]

-0.4300 -0.2878 -0.1327
-0.0573 -1.2900 0.2467

Plane [2,...]

-1.4249 -0.0796 1.2693
-0.7530 -1.7906 -0.6103

Plane [3,...]

1.2586 -0.4773 0.7044
-1.2544 0.5002 0.3559
```

The second argument in the call to **arrayalloc** specifies whether the created array is real or complex. **arrayinit** creates only real arrays.

11.2 Assigning to Arrays

There are three methods used for assignment to an array:

index operator	The same method as matrices, generalized to arrays.
putArray	Put a subarray into an N-dimensional array and returns the result.
setArray	Set a subarray of an N-dimensional array in place.

And there are several ways to extract parts of arrays:

index operator	The same method as matrices, generalized to arrays.
----------------	---

getArray	Get a subarray from an array.
getMatrix	Get a matrix from an array.
getMatrix4D	Get a matrix from a 4-dimensional array.
getScalar4D	Get a scalar from a 4-dimensional array.

The index operator is the slowest way to extract parts of arrays. The specialized functions are the fastest when the circumstances are appropriate for their use.

11.2.1 index operator

The index operator will put a **subarray** into an array in a manner analogous to the use of index operators on matrices:

```
a = arrayinit(3|2|2,0);
b = arrayinit(3|1|2,1);
a[:,2,:] = b;
```

```
print a;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
0.00000 0.00000
1.0000 1.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
0.00000 0.00000
1.0000 1.0000
```

```
Plane [3,...]
```

```
0.00000 0.00000
1.0000 1.0000
```

As this example illustrates, the assignment doesn't have to be contiguous. **putMatrix** and **setMatrix** require a contiguous assignment, but for that reason they are faster.

The right hand side of the assignment can also be a matrix:

```
a[1,.,.] = rndn(2,2);
print a;

Plane [1,.,.]

-1.7906502 -0.61038103
 1.2586160 -0.47736360

Plane [2,.,.]

0.000000 0.000000
1.000000 1.000000

Plane [3,.,.]

0.000000 0.000000
1.000000 1.000000
```

The index operator will extract an array from a subarray in a manner analogous to the use of index operators on matrices:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,12),3|2|2);
b = a[.,1,.];

print a;

Plane [1,.,.]

1.0000 2.0000
3.0000 4.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]

5.0000 6.0000
7.0000 8.0000

Plane [3,...]

9.0000 10.000

11.000 12.000

print b;

Plane [1,...]

1.0000 2.0000

Plane [2,...]

5.0000 6.0000

Plane [3,...]

9.0000 10.000
```

It is important to note that the result is always an array even if it's a scalar value:

```
c = a[1,1,1];
print c;

Plane [1,...]

1.0000
```

If you require a matrix result, and if the result has one or two dimensions, use **arraytomat** to convert to a matrix, or use **getMatrix**, or **getMatrix4D**. Or, if the result is a scalar, use **getScalar3D** or **getScalar4D**.

11.2.2 **getArray**

getArray is an additional method for extracting arrays:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,12),3|2|2);  
b = getarray(a,2|1);  
print a;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
1.0000 2.0000  
3.0000 4.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
5.0000 6.0000  
7.0000 8.0000
```

```
Plane [3,...]
```

```
9.0000 10.000  
11.000 12.000
```

```
print b;
```

```
5.0000 6.0000
```

getArray can only extract a contiguous part of an array. To get non-contiguous parts you must use the index operator.

11.2.3 getMatrix

If the result is one or two dimensions, **getMatrix** returns a portion of an array converted to a matrix. **getMatrix** is about 20 percent faster than the index operator:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,12),3|2|2);
b = getMatrix(a,2);
print b;

5.0000 6.0000
7.0000 8.0000
```

11.2.4 getMatrix4D

This is a specialized version of **getMatrix** for 4-dimensional arrays. It behaves just like **getMatrix** but is dramatically faster for that type of array. The following illustrates the difference in timing:

```
a = arrayinit(100|100|10|10,1);
t0 = date;

for i(1,100,1);
    for j(1,100,1);
        b = a[i,j,...];
    endfor;
endfor;

t1 = date;
e1 = ethsec(t0,t1);
print e1;
print;
t2=date;

for i(1,100,1);
```

```
        for j(1,100,1);
            b = getMatrix4d(a,i,j);
        endfor;
    endfor;

    t3 = date;
    e2 = ethsec(t2,t3);
    print e2;
    print;
    print ftostrC(100*((e1-e2)/e1),
        "percent difference - %6.2lf%%");

    13.0000000

    5.00000000

    percent difference - 61.54%
```

11.2.5 getScalar3D, getScalar4D

These are specialized versions of **getMatrix** for retrieving scalar elements of 3-dimensional and 4-dimensional arrays, respectively. They behave just like **getMatrix**, with scalar results, but are much faster. For example:

```
a = arrayinit(100|10|10,1);
t0 = date;

for i(1,100,1);
    for j(1,10,1);
        for k(1,10,1);
            b = a[i,j,k];
        endfor;
    endfor;
endfor;
```

```

t1 = date;
e1 = ethsec(t0,t1);
print e1;
print;
t2=date;

for i(1,100,1);
    for j(1,10,1);
        for k(1,10,1);
            b = getscalar3d(a,i,j,k);
        endfor;
    endfor;
endfor;

t3 = date;
e2 = ethsec(t2,t3);
print e2;
print;
print ftostrC(100*((e1-e2)/e1),
    "percent difference - %6.2lf%%");

7.00000000

2.00000000

percent difference - 71.43%

```

11.2.6 putArray

putArray enters a subarray, matrix, or scalar into an N-dimensional array and returns the result in an array. This function is much faster than the index operator, but it requires the part of the array being assigned to be contiguous:

```

a = arrayinit(3|2|2,3);
b = putarray(a,2,eye(2));

```

```
print b;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
3.0000 3.0000  
3.0000 3.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
1.0000 0.00000  
0.00000 1.0000
```

```
Plane [3,...]
```

```
3.0000 3.0000  
3.0000 3.0000
```

11.2.7 setArray

setArray enters a subarray, matrix, or scalar into an N-dimensional array in place:

```
a = arrayinit(3|2|2,3);  
setarray a,2,eye(2);  
print b;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
3.0000 3.0000  
3.0000 3.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
1.0000 0.0000  
0.0000 1.0000
```

```
Plane [3,...]
```

```
3.0000 3.0000
3.0000 3.0000
```

11.3 Looping with Arrays

When working with arrays, **for** loops and **do** loops may be used in the usual way. In the following, let **Y** be an $N \times 1 \times L$ array of L time series, **X** an $N \times 1 \times K$ array of K independent variables, **B** a $K \times L$ matrix of regression coefficients, **phi** a $P \times L \times L$ array of garch coefficients, **theta** a $Q \times L \times L$ array of arch coefficients, and **omega** a $L \times L$ symmetric matrix of constants. The log-likelihood for a multivariate garch BEKK model can be computed using the index operator:

```
yord = getOrders(Y);
xord = getOrders(X);
gord = getOrders(phi);
aord = getOrders(theta);

N = yord[1]; /* No. of observations */
L = yord[3]; /* No. of time series */
K = xord[3]; /* No. of independent variables */
          /* in mean equation */
P = gord[1]; /* order of garch parameters */
Q = aord[1]; /* order of arch parameters */

r = maxc(P|Q);
E = Y - amult(X,areshape(B,N|K|L));
sigma = areshape(omega,N|L|L);

for i(r+1,N,1);
    for j(1,Q,1);
        W = amult(theta[j,...],
            atranspose(E[i-j,...],1|3|2));
        sigma[i,...] = sigma[i,...] + amult(W,atranspose(W,1|3|2));
```

```
        endfor;

        for j(1,P,1);
            sigma[i,...] = sigma[i,...] + amult(amult(phi[j,...],
                sigma[i-j,...]),phi[j,...]);
        endfor;
    endfor;

    sigmai = invpd(sigma);
    lndet = ln(det(sigma));
    ln1 = -0.5*( L*(N-R)*asum(ln(det(sigmai)),1) +
        asum(amult(amult(E,sigmai),atranspose(E,1|3|2)),3);
```

Instead of index operators, the above computation can be done using **getArray** and **setArray**:

```
yord = getOrders(Y);
xord = getOrders(X);
gord = getOrders(phi);
aord = getOrders(theta);

N = yord[1]; /* No. of observations */
L = yord[3]; /* No. of time series */
K = xord[3]; /* No. of independent variables */
           /* in mean equation */
P = gord[1]; /* order of garch parameters */
Q = aord[1]; /* order of arch parameters */

r = maxc(P|Q);
E = Y - amult(X,areshape(B,N|K|L));
sigma = areshape(omega,N|L|L);

for i(r+1,N,1);
    for j(1,Q,1);
        W = amult(getArray(theta,j),
            atranspose(getArray(E,i-j),2|1));
        setarray sigma,i,getArray(sigma,i)+
```

```

        amult(W,atranspose(W,2|1));
    endfor;

    for j(1,P,1);
        setarray sigma,i,toArray(sigma,i)+
            areshape(amult(amult(toArray(phi,j),
                toArray(sigma,i-j)),toArray(phi,j)),3|3);
    endfor;
endfor;

sigmai = invpd(sigma);
lndet = ln(det(sigma));
lnl = -0.5*( L*(N-R)*asum(ln(det(sigmai)),1)+
    asum(amult(amult(E,sigmai),atranspose(E,1|3|2)),3)

```

Putting the two code fragments above into loops that called them a hundred times and measuring the time, produced the following results:

index operator: 2.604 seconds

toArray, toArray: 1.092 seconds

Thus, the **toArray** and **toArray** methods are more than twice as fast.

11.3.1 loopnextindex

Several keyword functions are available in **GAUSS** for looping with arrays. The problem in the previous section, for example, can be written using these functions rather than with **for** loops:

```

sigind = r + 1;

sigloop:

```

```
sig0ind = sigind[1];
thetaind = 1;

thetaloop:
  sig0ind = sig0ind - 1;
  W = amult(getArray(theta,thetaind),
    atranspose(getArray(E,sig0ind),2|1));
  setarray sigma,sigind,getArray(sigma,sigind)+
    amult(W,atranspose(W,2|1));
  loopnextindex thetaloop,thetaind,aord;
  sig0ind = sigind;
  phiind = 1;

philoop:
  sig0ind[1] = sig0ind[1] - 1;
  setarray sigma,sigind,getArray(sigma,sigind)+
    areshape(amult(amult(getArray(phi,phiind),
      getArray(sigma,sig0ind)),
      getArray(phi,phiind)),3|3);
  loopnextindex philoop,phiind,gord;
  loopnextindex sigloop,sigind,sigord;
```

The **loopnextindex** function in this example isn't faster than the **for** loop used in the previous section primarily because the code is looping only through the first dimension in each loop. The advantages of **loopnextindex**, **previousindex**, **nextindex**, and **walkindex** are when the code is looping through the higher dimensions of a highly dimensioned array. In this case, looping through an array can be very complicated and difficult to manage using **for** loops.

loopnextindex can be faster and more useful.

The next example compares two ways of extracting a subarray from a 5-dimensional array:

```
ord = 3|3|3|3|3;
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,prodc(ord)),ord);
b = eye(3);

for i(1,3,1);
```

```
    for j(1,3,1);
        for k(1,3,1);
            setarray a,i|j|k,b;
        endfor;
    endfor;
endfor;

ind = { 1,1,1 };
loopi:
    setarray a,ind,b;
    loopnextindex loopi,ind,ord;
```

Calling each loop 10,000 times and measuring the time each takes, we get

for loop: 1.171 seconds

loopnextindex: .321 seconds

In other words, **loopnextindex** is about four times faster, a very significant difference.

11.4 Miscellaneous Array Functions

11.4.1 `atranspose`

This function changes the order of the dimensions. For example:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,12),2|3|2);
print a;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```

        1.0000 2.0000
        3.0000 4.0000
        5.0000 6.0000

Plane [2,...]

        7.0000 8.0000
        9.0000 10.000
        11.000 12.000

/*
** swap 2nd and 3rd dimension
*/

print atranspose(a,1|3|2);

Plane [1,...]

        1.0000 3.0000 5.0000
        2.0000 4.0000 6.0000

Plane [2,...]

        7.0000 9.0000 11.000
        8.0000 10.000 12.000

/*
** swap 1st and 3rd dimension
*/

print atranspose(a,3|2|1);

Plane [1,...]

        1.0000 7.0000
        3.0000 9.0000
        5.0000 11.000
```

```
Plane [2,...]

      2.0000  8.0000
      4.0000 10.000
      6.0000 12.000

/*
** move 3rd into the front
*/

print atranspose(a,3|1|2);

Plane [1,...]

      1.0000  3.0000  5.0000
      7.0000  9.0000 11.000

Plane [2,...]

      2.0000  4.0000  6.0000
      8.0000 10.000 12.000
```

11.4.2 amult

This function performs a matrix multiplication on the last two trailing dimensions of an array. The leading dimensions must be strictly conformable, and the last two trailing dimensions must be conformable in the matrix product sense. For example:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,12),2|3|2);
b = areshape(seqa(1,1,16),2|2|4);
c = amult(a,b);
print a;

Plane [1,...]
```

```
1.0000 2.0000
3.0000 4.0000
5.0000 6.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
7.0000 8.0000
9.0000 10.000
11.000 12.000
```

```
print b;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
1.0000 2.0000 3.0000 4.0000
5.0000 6.0000 7.0000 8.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
9.0000 10.000 11.000 12.000
13.000 14.000 15.000 16.000
```

```
print c;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
11.000 14.000 17.000 20.000
23.000 30.000 37.000 44.000
35.000 46.000 57.000 68.000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
167.00 182.00 197.00 212.00
211.00 230.00 249.00 268.00
255.00 278.00 301.00 324.00
```

Suppose we have a matrix of data sets, a 2×2 matrix of 100×5 data sets that we've stored in a $2 \times 2 \times 100 \times 5$ array called **x**. The moment matrices of these data sets can easily and quickly be computed using **atranspose** and **amult**:

```
vc = amult(atranspose(x,1|2|4|3),x);
```

11.4.3 amean, amin, amax

These functions compute the means, minimums, and maximums, respectively, across a dimension of an array. The size of the selected dimension of the resulting array is shrunk to one and contains the means, minimums, or maximums depending on the function called. For example:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,12),2|3|2);
print a;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
1.0000 2.0000
3.0000 4.0000
5.0000 6.0000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
7.0000 8.0000
9.0000 10.000
11.000 12.000
```

```
/*
** compute means along third dimension
*/
```

```
print amean(a,3);
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```

        4.0000 5.0000
        6.0000 7.0000
        8.0000 9.0000

/*
** print means along the second dimension, i.e.,
** down the columns
*/

print amean(a,2);

Plane [1,...]

        3.0000 4.0000

Plane [2,...]

        9.0000 10.000

/*
** print the minimums down the columns
*/

print amin(a,2);

Plane [1,...]

        1.0000 2.0000

Plane [2,...]

        7.0000 8.0000

/*
** print the maximums along the third dimension
*/
```

```
print amax(a,3);

Plane [1,...]

7.0000 8.0000
9.0000 10.000
11.000 12.000
```

11.4.4 getDims

This function returns the number of dimensions of an array:

```
a = arrayinit(4|4|5|2,0);
print getdims(a);

4.00
```

11.4.5 getOrders

This function returns the sizes of each dimension of an array. The length of the vector returned by **getOrders** is the dimension of the array:

```
a = arrayinit(4|4|5|2,0);
print getOrders(a);

4.00
4.00
5.00
2.00
```

11.4.6 arraytomat

This function converts an array with two or fewer dimensions to a matrix:

```
a = arrayinit(2|2,0);  
b = arraytomat(a);  
type(a);  
  
21.000  
  
type(b);  
  
6.0000
```

11.4.7 mattoarray

This function converts a matrix to an array:

```
b = rndn(2,2);  
a = mattoarray(b);  
type(b);  
  
6.0000  
  
type(a);  
  
21.000
```

11.5 Using Arrays with GAUSS functions

Many of the **GAUSS** functions have been re-designed to work with arrays. There are two general approaches to this implementation. There are exceptions, however, and you are urged to refer to the documentation if you are not sure how a particular **GAUSS** function handles array input.

In the first approach, the function returns an element-by-element result that is strictly conformable to the input. For example, **cdfnc** returns an array of identical size and shape to the input array:

```
a = areshape(seqa(-2,.5,12),2|3|2);
b = cdfnc(a);
```

```
print b;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
0.9772 0.9331
0.8413 0.6914
0.5000 0.3085
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
0.1586 0.0668
0.0227 0.0062
0.0013 0.0002
```

In the second approach, which applies generally to **GAUSS** matrix functions, the function operates on the matrix defined by the last two trailing dimensions of the array. Thus, given a $5 \times 10 \times 3$ array, **moment** returns a $5 \times 3 \times 3$ array of five moment matrices computed from the five 10×3 matrices in the input array.

Only the last two trailing dimensions matter; i.e., given a $2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 \times 10 \times 6$ array, **moment** returns a $2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 \times 6 \times 6$ array of moment matrices.

For example, in the following the result is a 2×3 array of 3×1 vectors of singular values of a 2×3 array of 6×3 matrices:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,108),2|3|6|3);
b=svds(a);
print b;
```

Plane [1,1,...]

45.894532
1.6407053
1.2063156e-015

Plane [1,2,...]

118.72909
0.63421188
5.8652600e-015

Plane [1,3,...]

194.29063
0.38756064
1.7162751e-014

Plane [2,1,...]

270.30524
0.27857175
1.9012118e-014

Plane [2,2,...]

346.47504
0.21732995
1.4501098e-014

Plane [2,3,...]

422.71618
0.17813229
1.6612287e-014

It might be tempting to conclude from this example that, in general, a **GAUSS** function's behavior

on the last two trailing dimensions of an array is strictly analogous to the **GAUSS** function's behavior on a matrix. This may be true with some of the functions, but not all. For example, the **GAUSS meanc** function returns a column result for matrix input. However, the behavior for the **GAUSS amean** function is not analogous. This function takes a second argument that specifies on which dimension the mean is to be taken. That dimension is then collapsed to a size of 1. Thus:

```
a = areshape(seqa(1,1,24),2|3|4);
print a;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
1.000  2.000  3.000  4.000
5.000  6.000  7.000  8.000
9.000 10.000 11.000 12.000
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
13.000 14.000 15.000 16.000
17.000 18.000 19.000 20.000
21.000 22.000 23.000 24.000
```

```
/*
** means computed across rows
*/
```

```
b = amean(a,1);
print b;
```

```
Plane [1,...]
```

```
2.500
6.500
10.500
```

```
Plane [2,...]
```

```
14.500
```

```
18.500
22.500

/*
** means computed down columns
*/

c = amean(a,2);
print c;

Plane [1,...]

5.000  6.000  7.000  8.000

Plane [2,...]

17.000 18.000 19.000 20.000

/*
** means computed along 3rd dimension
*/

d = amean(a,3);
print d;

Plane [1,...]

7.000  8.000  9.000 10.000
11.000 12.000 13.000 14.000
15.000 16.000 17.000 18.000
```

11.6 A Panel Data Model

Suppose we have N cases observed at T times. Let y_{it} be an observation on a dependent variable for the i^{th} case at time t , X_{it} an observation of k independent variables for the i^{th} case at time t , B , a

$K \times 1$ vector of coefficients. Then

$$y_{it} = X_{it}B + \mu_i + \epsilon_{it}$$

is a variance components model where μ_i is a random error term uncorrelated with ϵ_{it} , but which is correlated within cases. This implies an $NT \times NT$ residual moment matrix that is block diagonal with N $T \times T$ moment matrices with the following form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \sigma_\mu^2 + \sigma_\epsilon^2 & \sigma_\mu^2 & \dots & \sigma_\mu^2 \\ \sigma_\mu^2 & \sigma_\mu^2 + \sigma_\epsilon^2 & \dots & \sigma_\mu^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \sigma_\mu^2 & \sigma_\mu^2 & \dots & \sigma_\mu^2 + \sigma_\epsilon^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The log-likelihood for this model is

$$\ln L = -0.5(NT \ln(2\pi) - \ln |\Omega| + (Y - XB)' \Omega^{-1} (Y - XB))$$

where Ω is the block-diagonal moment matrix of the residuals.

Computing the Log-likelihood

Using **GAUSS** arrays, we can compute the log-likelihood of this model without resorting to **do** loops. Let **Y** be a $100 \times 3 \times 1$ array of observations on the dependent variable, and **X** a $100 \times 3 \times 5$ array of observations on the independent variables. Further let **B** be a 5×1 vector of coefficients, and **sigu** and **sigc** be the residual variances of μ and ϵ respectively. Then, in explicit steps we compute

```
N = 100;
T = 3;
K = 5;
```

```
sigma = sigu * ones(T,T) + sige * eye(T); /* TxT sigma */
sigmai = invpd(sigma); /* sigma inverse */
lndet = N*ln(detl);
E = Y - amult(X,areshape(B,N|K|1)); /* residuals */
Omegai = areshape(sigmai,N|T|T); /* diagonal blocks */
/* stacked in a vector array */
R1 = amult(atranspose(E,1|3|2),Omegai); /* E'Omegai */
R2 = amult(R1,E); /* R1'E */
lnL = -0.5*(N*T*ln(2*pi) - lndet + asum(R2,3)); /* log-likelihood */
```

All of this can be made more efficient by nesting statements, which eliminates copying of temporary intervening arrays to local arrays. It is also useful to add a check for the positive definiteness of **sigma**:

```
N = 100;
T = 3;
K = 5;
const = -0.5*N*T*ln(2*pi);
oldt = trapchk(1);
trap 1,1;
sigmai = invpd(sigu*ones(T,T)+sige*eye(T));
trap oldt,1;

if not scalmiss(sigmai);
    E = Y - amult(X,areshape(B,N|K|1));
    lnL = const + 0.5*N*ln(detl)-
        0.5*asum(amult(amult(atranspose(E,1|3|2),
            areshape(sigmai,N|T|T)),E),3);
else;
    lnL = error(0);
endif;
```

11.7 Appendix

This is an incomplete list of special functions for working with arrays. Many **GAUSS** functions have been modified to handle arrays and are not listed here. For example, **cdfnc** computes the complement of the Normal cdf for each element of an array just as it would for a matrix. See the documentation for these **GAUSS** functions for information about their behavior with arrays.

aconcat	Concatenate conformable matrices and arrays in a user-specified dimension.
aeye	Create an array of identity matrices.
amax	Compute the maximum elements across a dimension of an array.
amean	Compute the mean along one dimension of an array.
amin	Compute the minimum elements across a dimension of an array.
amult	Perform a matrix multiplication on the last two trailing dimensions of an array.
areshape	Reshape a scalar, matrix, or array into an array of user-specified size.
arrayalloc	Create an N-dimensional array with unspecified contents.
arrayinit	Create an N-dimensional array with a specified fill value.
arraytomat	Change an array to type matrix.
asum	Compute the sum across one dimension of an array.
atranspose	Transpose an N-dimensional array.
getarray	Get a contiguous subarray from an N-dimensional array.
getdims	Get the number of dimensions in an array.
getmatrix	Get a contiguous matrix from an N-dimensional array.
getmatrix4D	Get a contiguous matrix from a 4-dimensional array.
getorders	Get the vector of orders corresponding to an array.

getscalar3D	Get a scalar from a 3-dimensional array.
getscalar4D	Get a scalar form a 4-dimensional array.
loopnextindex	Increment an index vector to the next logical index and jump to the specified label if the index did not wrap to the beginning.
mattoarray	Change a matrix to a type array.
nextindex	Return the index of the next element or subarray in an array.
previousindex	Return the index of the previous element or subarray in an array.
putarray	Put a contiguous subarray into an N-dimensional array and return the resulting array.
setarray	Set a contiguous subarray of an N-dimensional array.
walkindex	Walk the index of an array forward or backward through a specified dimension.

Structures 12

12.1 Basic Structures

12.1.1 Structure Definition

The syntax for a structure definition is

```
struct A { /* list of members */ };
```

The list of members can include scalars, arrays, matrices, strings, and string arrays, as well as other structures. As a type, scalars are unique to structures and don't otherwise exist.

For example, the following defines a structure containing the possible contents:

```
struct generic_example {  
    scalar x;  
    matrix y;
```

```
string s1;  
string array s2  
struct other_example t;  
};
```

A useful convention is to put the structure definition into a file with a `.sdf` extension. Then, for any command file or source code file that requires this definition, put

```
#include filename.sdf
```

For example:

```
#include example.sdf
```

These statements create structure definitions that persist until the workspace is cleared. They do not create structures, only structure-type definitions. The next section describes how to create an instance of a structure.

12.1.2 Declaring an Instance

To use a structure, it is necessary to declare an instance. The syntax for this is

```
struct structure_type structure_name;
```

For example:

```
#include example.sdf  
struct generic_example p0;
```

12.1.3 Initializing an Instance

Members of structures are referenced using a “dot” syntax:

```
p0.x = rndn(20,3);
```

The same syntax applies when referred to on the right-hand side:

```
mn = mean(p0.x);
```

Initialization of Global Structures

Global structures are initialized at compile time. Each member of the structure is initialized according to the following schedule:

scalar	0, a scalar zero
matrix	, an empty matrix with zero rows and zero columns
array	0, a 1-dimensional array set to zero
string	"", a null string
string array	"", a 1×1 string array set to null

If a global already exists in memory, it will not be reinitialized. It may be the case in your program that when it is rerun, the global variables may need to be reset to default values. That is, your program may depend on certain members of a structure being set to default values that are set to some other value later in the program. When you rerun this program, you will want to reinitialize the global structure. To do this, make an assignment to at least one of the members. This can be made convenient by writing a procedure that declares a structure and initializes one of its members to a default value, and then returns it. For example:

```
/* ds.src */
#include ds.sdf

proc dsCreate;
```

```
    struct DS d0;  
    d0.dataMatrix = 0;  
    retp(d0);  
endp;
```

Calling this function after declaring an instance of the structure will ensure initialization to default values each time your program is run:

```
struct DS d0;  
d0 = dsCreate;
```

Initializing Local Structures

Local structures, which are structures defined inside procedures, are initialized at the first assignment. The procedure may have been written in such a way that a subset of structures are used on any one call, and in that case time is saved by not initializing the unused structures. They will be initialized to default values only when the first assignment is made to one of its members.

12.1.4 Arrays of Structures

To create a matrix of instances, use the **reshape** command:

```
#include ds.sdf  
struct DS p0;  
p0 = reshape(dsCreate,5,1);
```

This creates a 5×1 vector of instances of **DS** structures, with all of the members initialized to default values.

When the instance members have been set to some other values, **reshape** will produce multiple copies of that instance set to those values.

Matrices or vectors of instances can also be created by concatenation:

```
#include trade.sdf
struct option p0,p1,p2;

p0 = optionCreate;
p1 = optionCreate;
p2 = p1 | p0;
```

12.1.5 Structure Indexing

Structure indexing may be used to reference a particular element in a structure array. The syntax follows that of matrix indexing. For example, given the following structure definition:

```
struct example1 {
    matrix x;
    matrix y;
    string str;
};
```

you could create an array of **example1** structures and index it as follows:

```
struct example1 e1a;
struct example1 e1b;

e1a = e1a | e1b;
e1a[2,1].y = randn(25,10);
```

In this example, **e1a** and **e1b** are concatenated to create a 2×1 array of **example1** structures that is assigned back to **e1a**. Then the **y** member of the [2,1] element of **e1a** is set to a random matrix.

Indexing of structure arrays can occur on multiple levels. For example, let's define the following structures:

```
struct example3 {
```

```
        matrix w;  
        string array sa;  
    };  
  
    struct example2 {  
        matrix z;  
        struct example3 e3;  
    };
```

and let's redefine **example1** to include an instance of an **example2** structure:

```
    struct example1 {  
        matrix x;  
        matrix y;  
        string str;  
        struct example2 e2;  
    };
```

Let's assume that we have an **example1** structure **e1** like the one displayed in Figure 12.1. We could then index the structure as follows:

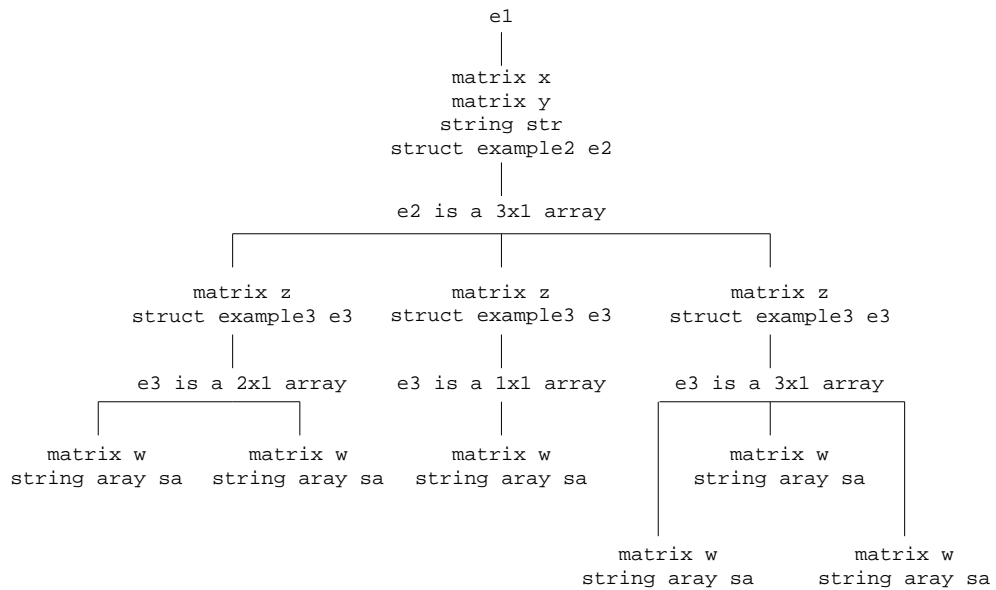
```
r = e1.e2[3,1].e3[2,1].w
```

You can also use indexing to reference the structure itself, rather than a member of that structure:

```
struct example3 e3tmp;  
e3tmp = e1.e2[3,1].e3[2,1];
```

Or you can use indexing to reference a subarray of structures:

```
e3tmp = e1.e2[3,1].e3[.,1];
```

Figure 12.1: Structure tree for **e1**

In this case, **e3tmp** would be an array of 3×1 **example3** structures, since the [3,1] member of **e1.e2** contains a 3×1 array of **example3** structures.

It is important to remember, however, that when indexing a structure array on multiple levels, only the final index may resolve to an array of structures. For example:

```
e3tmp = e1.e2[.,1].e3[2,1];
```

would be invalid, since **e1.e2**[.,1] resolves to a 3×1 array of **example2** structures.

12.1.6 Saving an Instance to the Disk

Instances and vectors or matrices of instances of structures can be saved in a file on the disk, and later loaded from the file onto the disk. The syntax for saving an instance to the disk is

```
ret = savestruct(instance,filename);
```

The file on the disk will have an **.fsr** extension.

For example:

```
#include ds.sdf
struct DS p0;

p0 = reshape(dsCreate,2,1);
retc = saveStruct(p2,"p2");
```

This saves the vector of instances in a file called **p2.fsr**. **retc** will be zero if the save was successful; otherwise, nonzero.

12.1.7 Loading an Instance from the Disk

The syntax for loading a file containing an instance or matrix of instances is

```
instance, retc = loadstruct(file_name,structure_name);
```

For example:

```
#include trade.sdf;  
struct DS p3;  
{ p3, retc } = loadstruct("p2","ds");
```

12.1.8 Passing Structures to Procedures

Structures or members of structures can be passed to procedures. When a structure is passed as an argument to a procedure, it is passed by value. The structure becomes a local copy of the structure that was passed. The data in the structure is not duplicated unless the local copy of the structure has a new value assigned to one of its members. Structure arguments must be declared in the procedure definition:

```
struct rectangle {  
    matrix ulx;  
    matrix uly;  
    matrix lrx;  
    matrix lry;  
};  
  
proc area(struct rectangle rect);  
    retp((rect.lrx - rect.ulx).*(rect.uly - rect.lry));  
endp;
```

Local structures are defined using a **struct** statement inside the procedure definition:

```
proc center(struct rectangle rect);
    struct rectangle cent;

    cent.lrx = (rect.lrx - rect.ulx) / 2;
    cent.ulx = -cent.lrx;
    cent.uly = (rect.uly - rect.lry) / 2;
    cent.lry = -cent.uly;
    retp(cent);
endp;
```

12.2 Structure Pointers

A structure pointer is a separate data type that contains the address of a structure and is used to reference that structure.

12.2.1 Creating and Assigning Structure Pointers

Given the following structure type definition:

```
struct example_struct {
    matrix x;
    matrix y;
};
```

a pointer to an **example_struct** structure can be created with the following syntax:

```
struct example_struct *esp;
```

However, at this point, **esp** is not yet pointing at anything. It has only been defined to be the kind of pointer that points at **example_struct** structures. To set it to point at a particular structure instance, we must first create the structure instance:

```
struct example_struct es;
```

and then we can set **esp** to point at **es** by setting **esp** to the address of **es**:

```
esp = &es;
```

The following code:

```
struct example_struct es2;  
es2 = *esp;
```

copies the contents of the structure that **esp** is pointing at (i.e., the contents of **es**) to **es2**. It is the same as

```
struct example_struct es2;  
es2 = es;
```

12.2.2 Structure Pointer References

To reference a member of a structure, we use a “dot” syntax. For example, we might use the following code to set the **x** member of **es**.

```
es.x = rndn(3,3);
```

To reference a member of a structure using a pointer to that structure, we use an “arrow” syntax. For example, we might use the following code to set the **x** member of **es** using the pointer **esp**:

```
esp->x = rndn(10,5);
```

This code will modify **es**, since **esp** is merely a pointer to **es**.

Structure pointers cannot be members of a structure. The following is illegal:

```
struct example_struct_2 {  
    matrix z;  
    struct example_struct *ep;  
};
```

Therefore, since a structure pointer will never be a member of a structure, neither

```
sp1->sp2->x;
```

nor

```
s.sp1->x;
```

will ever be valid (**sp1** and **sp2** are assumed to be structure pointers, **s** a structure instance, and **x** a matrix). The “arrow” (**->**) will only be valid if it is used for the first (or furthest left) dereference, as in:

```
sp1->st.x;
```

At this point we do not support indexing of structure pointers. Thus, a structure pointer should point at a scalar structure instance, not a matrix of structures. However, you may index members of that scalar structure instance. So, for example, let us suppose that you defined the following structure types:

```
struct sb {  
    matrix y;  
    matrix z;
```

```
};

struct sa {
    matrix x;
    struct structb s;
};
```

and then created an instance of an **sa** structure, **a0**, setting **a0.s** to a 3×2 matrix of **sb** structures. The following would be legal:

```
struct sa *sap
sap = &a0;
sap->s[3,1].y = rndn(3,3);
```

12.2.3 Using Structure Pointers in Procedures

Structure pointers are especially useful in cases where structures are passed into and out of procedures. If a procedure takes a structure as an argument and modifies any members of that structure, then it makes a local copy of the entire structure before modifying it. Thus if you want to have the modified copy of the structure after running the procedure, you need to pass the structure out of the procedure as one of its return arguments. For example:

```
struct example_struct {
    matrix x;
    matrix y;
    matrix z;
};

proc product(struct example_struct es);
    es.z = (es.x).*(es.y);
    retp(es);
endp;

struct example_struct es1;
```

```
es1.x = rndn(1000,100);  
es1.y = rndn(1000,1);  
es1 = product(es1);
```

In this example, the structure **es1** is passed into the procedure, copied and modified. The modified structure is then passed out of the procedure and assigned back to **es1**.

Structure pointers allow you to avoid such excessive data copying and eliminate the need to pass a structure back out of a procedure in cases like this. When you pass a structure pointer into a procedure and then modify a member of the structure that it references, the actual structure is modified rather than a local copy of it. Thus there is no need to pass the modified structure back out of the procedure. For example, the above example could be accomplished using structure pointers as follows:

```
struct example_struct {  
    matrix x;  
    matrix y;  
    matrix z;  
};  
  
proc(0) = product(struct example_struct *esp);  
    esp->z = (esp->x).*(esp->y);  
endp;  
  
struct example_struct es1;  
struct example_struct *es1p;  
  
es1p = &es1;  
es1.x = rndn(1000,100);  
es1.y = rndn(1000,1);  
product(es1p);
```

In this case, the procedure modifies the structure **es1**, which **es1p** is pointing at, instead of a local copy of the structure.

12.3 Special Structures

There are three common types of structures that will be found in the **GAUSS Run-Time Library** and applications.

The **DS** and **PV** structures are defined in the **GAUSS Run-Time Library**. Their definitions are found in `ds.sdf` and `pv.sdf`, respectively, in the `src` source code subdirectory.

Before structures, many procedures in the **Run-Time Library** and all applications had global variables serving a variety of purposes, such as setting and altering defaults. Currently, these variables are being entered as members of “control” structures.

12.3.1 The DS Structure

The **DS** structure, or “data” structure, is a very simple structure. It contains a member for each **GAUSS** data type. The following is found in `ds.sdf`:

```
struct DS {  
    scalar type;  
    matrix dataMatrix;  
    array dataArray;  
    string dname;  
    string array vnames;  
};
```

This structure was designed for use by the various optimization functions in **GAUSS**, in particular, **sqpSolve****mt**, as well as a set of gradient procedures, **gradmt**, **hessmt**, et al.

These procedures all require that the user provide a procedure computing a function (to be optimized or take the derivative of, etc.), which takes the **DS** structure as an argument. The **Run-Time Library** procedures such as **sqpSolve****mt** take the **DS** structure as an argument and pass it on to the user-provided procedure without modification. Thus, the user can put into that structure whatever might be needed as data in the procedure.

To initialize an instance of a **DS** structure, the procedure **dsCreate** is defined in `ds.src`:

```
#include ds.sdf
struct DS d0;
d0 = dsCreate;
```

12.3.2 The PV Structure

The **PV** structure, or *parameter vector* structure, is used by various optimization, modelling, and gradient procedures, in particular **sqpSolvemt**, for handling the parameter vector. The **GAUSS Run-Time Library** contains special functions that work with this structure. They are prefixed by “pv” and defined in `pv.src`. These functions store matrices and arrays with parameters in the structure, and retrieve various kinds of information about the parameters and parameter vector from it.

“Packing” into a PV Structure

The various procedures in the **Run-Time Library** and applications for optimization, modelling, derivatives, etc., all require a parameter vector. Parameters in complex models, however, often come in matrices of various types, and it has been the responsibility of the programmer to generate the parameter vector from the matrices and vice versa. The **PV** procedures make this problem much more convenient to solve.

The typical situation involves two parts: first, “packing” the parameters into the **PV** structure, which is then passed to the **Run-Time Library** procedure or application; and second, “unpacking” the **PV** structure in the user-provided procedure for use in computing the objective function. For example, to pack parameters into a **PV** structure:

```
#include sqpsolvemt.sdf

/* starting values */

b0 = 1; /* constant in mean equation */
garch = { .1, .1 }; /* garch parameters */
arch = { .1, .1 }; /* arch parameters */
omega = .1; /* constant in variance equation */
```

```

struct PV p0;

p0 = pvPack(pvCreate,b0,"b0");
p0 = pvPack(p0,garch,"garch");
p0 = pvPack(p0,arch,"arch");
p0 = pvPack(p0,omega,"omega");

/* data */

z = loadd("tseries");

struct DS d0;
d0.dataMatrix = z;

```

Next, in the user-provided procedure for computing the objective function, in this case minus the log-likelihood, the parameter vector is unpacked:

```

proc ll(struct PV p0, struct DS d0);
    local b0,garch,arch,omega,p,q,h,u,vc,w;

    b0 = pvUnpack(p0,"b0");
    garch = pvUnpack(p0,"garch");
    arch = pvUnpack(p0,"arch");
    omega = pvUnpack(p0,"omega");

    p = rows(garch);
    q = rows(arch);

    u = d0.dataMatrix - b0;
    vc = moment(u,0)/rows(u);
    w = omega + (zeros(q,q) | shiftr((u.*ones(1,q))',
        seqa(q-1,-1,q))) * arch;
    h = recserar(w,vc*ones(p,1),garch);
    logl = -0.5 * ((u.*u)./h + ln(2*pi) + ln(h));

    retp(logl);

```

```
endp;
```

Masked Matrices

The **pvUnpack** function unpacks parameters into matrices or arrays for use in computations. The first argument is a **PV** structure containing the parameter vector. Sometimes the matrix or vector is partly parameters to be estimated (that is, a parameter to be entered in the parameter vector) and partly fixed parameters. To distinguish between estimated and fixed parameters, an additional argument is used in the packing function called a “mask”, which is strictly conformable to the input matrix. Its elements are set to 1 for an estimated parameter and 0 for a fixed parameter. For example:

```
p0 = pvPackm(p0, .1*eye(3), "theta", eye(3));
```

Here just the diagonal of a 3×3 matrix is added to the parameter vector.

When this matrix is unpacked, the entire matrix is returned with current values of the parameters on the diagonal:

```
print pvUnpack(p0, "theta");
```

```
0.1000  0.0000  0.0000
0.0000  0.1000  0.0000
0.0000  0.0000  0.1000
```

Symmetric Matrices

Symmetric matrices are a special case because even if the entire matrix is to be estimated, only the nonredundant portion is to be put into the parameter vector. Thus, for them there are special procedures. For example:

```
vc = { 1 .6 .4, .6 1 .2, .4 .2 1 };
p0 = pvPacks(p0,vc,"vc");
```

There is also a procedure for masking in case only a subset of the nonredundant elements are to be included in the parameter vector:

```
vc = { 1 .6 .4, .6 1 .2, .4 .2 1 };
mask = { 1 1 0, 1 1 0, 0 0 1 };
p0 = pvPacksm(p0,vc,"vc",mask);
```

Fast Unpacking

When unpacking matrices using a matrix name, **pvUnpack** has to make a search through a list of names, which is relatively time-consuming. This can be alleviated by using an index rather than a name in unpacking. To do this, though, requires using a special pack procedure that establishes the index:

```
p0 = pvPacki(p0,b0,"b0",1);
p0 = pvPacki(p0,garch,"garch",2);
p0 = pvPacki(p0,arch,"arch",3);
p0 = pvPacki(p0,omega,"omega",4);
Now they may be unpacked using the index number:
b0 = pvUnpack(p0,1);
garch = pvUnpack(p0,2);
arch = pvUnpack(p0,3);
omega = pvUnpack(p0,4);
```

When packed with an index number, they may be unpacked either by index or by name, but unpacking by index is faster.

12.3.3 Miscellaneous PV Procedures

pvList

This procedure generates a list of the matrices or arrays packed into the structure:

```
p0 = pvPack(p0,b0,"b0");  
p0 = pvPack(p0,garch,"garch");  
p0 = pvPack(p0,arch,"arch");  
p0 = pvPack(p0,omega,"omega");  
print pvList(p0);
```

```
b0  
garch  
arch  
omega
```

pvLength

This procedure returns the length of the parameter vector:

```
print pvLength(p0);  
  
6.0000
```

pvGetParNames

This procedure generates a list of parameter names:

```
print pvGetParNames(p0);
```

```
b0[1,1]
garch[1,1]
garch[2,1]
arch[1,1]
arch[2,1]
omega[1,1]
```

pvGetParVector

This procedure returns the parameter vector itself:

```
print pvGetParVector(p0);

1.0000
0.1000
0.1000
0.1000
0.1000
1.0000
```

pvPutParVector

This procedure replaces the parameter vector with the one in the argument:

```
newp = { 1.5, .2, .2, .3, .3, .8 };
p0 = pvPutParVector(newp,p0);
print pvGetParVector(p0);

1.5000
0.2000
0.2000
0.3000
0.3000
0.8000
```

pvGetIndex

This procedure returns the indices in the parameter vector of the parameters in a matrix. These indices are useful when setting linear constraints or bounds in **sqpSolvemt**. Bounds, for example, are set by specifying a $K \times 2$ matrix where K is the length of the parameter vector and the first column are the lower bounds and the second the upper bounds. To set the bounds for a particular parameter, then, requires knowing where that parameter is in the parameter vector. This information can be found using **pvGetIndex**. For example:

```
// get indices of lambda parameters in parameter vector
lind = pvGetIndex(par0,"lambda");

// set bounds constraint matrix to unconstrained default
c0.bounds = ones(pvLength(par0),1).*(-1e250~1e250);

// set bounds for lambda parameters to be positive
c0.bounds[lind,1] = zeros(rows(lind),1);
```

12.3.4 Control Structures

Another important class of structures is the “control” structure. Applications developed before structures were introduced into **GAUSS** typically handled some program specifications by the use of global variables which had some disadvantages, in particular, preventing the nesting of calls to procedures.

Currently, the purposes served by global variables are now served by the use of a control structure. For example, for **sqpSolvemt**:

```
struct sqpSolvemtControl {
    matrix A;
    matrix B;
    matrix C;
    matrix D;
    scalar eqProc;
    scalar ineqProc;
```

```

matrix bounds;
scalar gradProc;
scalar hessProc;
scalar maxIters;
scalar dirTol;
scalar CovType;
scalar feasibleTest;
scalar maxTries;
scalar randRadius;
scalar trustRadius;
scalar seed;
scalar output;
scalar printIters;
matrix weights;
};

```

The members of this structure determine optional behaviors of **sqpSolve**.

12.4 sqpSolve

sqpSolve is a procedure in the **GAUSS Run-Time Library** that solves the general nonlinear programming problem using a Sequential Quadratic Programming descent method, that is, it solves

$$\min f(\theta)$$

subject to

$A\theta = B$	linear equality
$C\theta \geq D$	linear inequality
$H(\theta) = 0$	nonlinear equality
$G(\theta) \geq 0$	nonlinear inequality
$\theta_{lb} \leq \theta \leq \theta_{ub}$	bounds

The linear and bounds constraints are redundant with respect to the nonlinear constraints, but are treated separately for computational convenience.

The call to **sqpSolveMT** has four input arguments and one output argument:

```
out = SQPsolveMT(&fct,P,D,C);
```

12.4.1 Input Arguments

The first input argument is a pointer to the objective function to be minimized. The procedure computing this objective function has two arguments: a **PV** structure containing the start values, and a **DS** structure containing data, if any. For example:

```
proc fct(struct PV p0, struct DS d0);  
    local y, x, b0, b, e, s;  
    y = d0[1].dataMatrix;  
    x = d0[2].dataMatrix;  
    b0 = pvUnpack(p0,"constant");  
    b = pvUnpack(p0,"coefficients");  
    e = y - b0 - x * b;  
    s = sqrt(e'e/rows(e));  
    retp(-pdfn(e/s);  
endp;
```

Note that this procedure returns a vector rather than a scalar. When the objective function is a properly defined log-likelihood, returning a vector of minus log-probabilities permits the calculation of a QML covariance matrix of the parameters.

The remaining input arguments are structures:

- | | |
|----------|--|
| <i>P</i> | a PV structure containing starting values of the parameters |
| <i>D</i> | a DS structure containing data, if any |

C an **sqpSolveMControl** structure

The **DS** structure is optional. **sqpSolveM** passes this argument on to the user-provided procedure that *EqProc* is pointing to without modification. If there is no data, a default structure can be passed to it.

sqpSolveMControl Structure

A default **sqpSolveMControl** structure can be passed in the fourth argument for an unconstrained problem. The members of this structure are as follows:

A	$M \times K$ matrix, linear equality constraint coefficients: $A\theta = B$, where p is a vector of the parameters.
B	$M \times 1$ vector, linear equality constraint constants: $A\theta = B$, where p is a vector of the parameters.
C	$M \times K$ matrix, linear inequality constraint coefficients: $C\theta = D$, where p is a vector of the parameters.
D	$M \times 1$ vector, linear inequality constraint constants: $C\theta = D$, where p is a vector of the parameters.
eqProc	scalar, pointer to a procedure that computes the nonlinear equality constraints. When such a procedure has been provided, it has two input arguments, instances of PV and DS structures, and one output argument, a vector of computed inequality constraints. Default = .; i.e., no inequality procedure.
IneqProc	scalar, pointer to a procedure that computes the nonlinear inequality constraints. When such a procedure has been provided, it has two input arguments, instances of PV and DS structures, and one output argument, a vector of computed inequality constraints. Default = .; i.e., no inequality procedure.

Bounds	<p>1×2 or K×2 matrix, bounds on parameters. If 1×2 all parameters have same bounds.</p> <p>Default = -1e256 1e256 .</p>
GradProc	<p>scalar, pointer to a procedure that computes the gradient of the function with respect to the parameters. When such a procedure has been provided, it has two input arguments, instances of PV and DS structures, and one output argument, the derivatives. If the function procedure returns a scalar, the gradient procedure returns a 1×K row vector of derivatives. If function procedure turns an N×1 vector, the gradient procedure returns an N×K matrix of derivatives.</p> <p>This procedure may compute a subset of the derivatives. sqpSolvemt will compute numerical derivatives for all those elements set to missing values in the return vector or matrix.</p> <p>Default = .; i.e., no gradient procedure has been provided.</p>
HessProc	<p>scalar, pointer to a procedure that computes the Hessian; i.e., the matrix of second order partial derivatives of the function with respect to the parameters. When such a procedure has been provided, it has two input arguments, instances of PV and DS structures, and one output argument, a vector of computed inequality constraints.</p> <p>Default = .; i.e., no Hessian procedure has been provided.</p> <p>Whether the objective function procedure returns a scalar or vector, the Hessian procedure must return a K×K matrix. Elements set to missing values will be computed numerically by sqpSolvemt.</p>
MaxIters	<p>scalar, maximum number of iterations. Default = 1e+5.</p>
MaxTries	<p>scalar, maximum number of attempts in random search. Default = 100.</p>
DirTol	<p>scalar, convergence tolerance for gradient of estimated coefficients. Default = 1e-5. When this criterion has been satisfied, sqpSolvemt exits the iterations.</p>
CovType	<p>scalar, if 2, QML covariance matrix, else if 0, no covariance matrix is computed, else ML covariance matrix is computed. For a QML covariance matrix, the objective function procedure must return an N×1 vector of minus log-probabilities.</p>

FeasibleTest	scalar, if nonzero, parameters are tested for feasibility before computing function in line search. If function is defined outside inequality boundaries, then this test can be turned off. Default = 1.
randRadius	scalar, if zero, no random search is attempted. If nonzero, it is the radius of the random search. Default = .001.
seed	scalar, if nonzero, seeds random number generator for random search, otherwise time in seconds from midnight is used.
trustRadius	scalar, radius of the trust region. If scalar missing, trust region not applied. The trust sets a maximum amount of the direction at each iteration. Default = .001.
output	scalar, if nonzero, results are printed. Default = 0.
PrintIters	scalar, if nonzero, prints iteration information. Default = 0.
weights	vector, weights for objective function returning a vector. Default = 1.

12.4.2 Output Argument

The single output argument is an **sqpSolveMTOut** structure. Its definition is:

```
struct SQPsolveMTOut {
    struct PV par;
    scalar fct;
    struct SQPsolveMTLagrange lagr;
    scalar retcode;
    matrix moment;
    matrix hessian;
    matrix xproduct;
};
```

The members of this structure are:

par instance of a **PV** structure containing the parameter estimates are placed in the matrix member **par**.

fct scalar, function evaluated at final parameter estimates.

lagr an instance of an **SQLagrange** structure containing the Lagrangeans for the constraints. For an instance named **lagr**, the members are:

lagr.lineq $M \times 1$ vector, Lagrangeans of linear equality constraints

lagr.nlineq $N \times 1$ vector, Lagrangeans of nonlinear equality constraints

lagr.linineq $P \times 1$ vector, Lagrangeans of linear inequality constraints

lagr.nlinineq $Q \times 1$ vector, Lagrangeans of nonlinear inequality constraints

lagr.bounds $K \times 2$ matrix, Lagrangeans of bounds

Whenever a constraint is active, its associated Lagrangean will be nonzero. For any constraint that is inactive throughout the iterations as well as at convergence, the corresponding Lagrangean matrix will be set to a scalar missing value.

retcode return code:

- 0** normal convergence
- 1** forced exit
- 2** maximum number of iterations exceeded
- 3** function calculation failed
- 4** gradient calculation failed
- 5** Hessian calculation failed
- 6** line search failed
- 7** error with constraints
- 8** function complex
- 9** feasible direction couldn't be found

12.4.3 Example

Define

$$Y = \Lambda\eta + \theta$$

where Λ is a $K \times L$ matrix of *loadings*, η an $L \times 1$ vector of unobserved “latent” variables, and θ a $K \times 1$ vector of unobserved errors. Then

$$\Sigma = \Lambda\Phi\Lambda'\Psi$$

where Φ is the $L \times L$ covariance matrix of the latent variables, and Ψ is the $K \times K$ covariance matrix of the errors.

The log-likelihood of the i^{th} observation is

$$\log P(i) = -\frac{1}{2}[K\ln(2\pi) + \ln |\Sigma| + Y(i)\Sigma^{-1}Y(i)']$$

Not all elements of Λ , Φ , and Ψ can be estimated. At least one element of each column of Λ must be fixed to 1, and Ψ is usually a diagonal matrix.

Constraints

To ensure a well-defined log-likelihood, constraints on the parameters are required to guarantee positive definite covariance matrices. To do this, a procedure is written that returns the eigenvalues of Σ and Φ minus a small number. **sqpSolve** then finds parameters such that these eigenvalues are greater than or equal to that small number.

12.4.4 The Command File

This command file can be found in the file `sqpfact.e` in the `examples` subdirectory:

```
#include sqpsolvemt.sdf

lambda = { 1.0 0.0,
           0.5 0.0,
           0.0 1.0,
           0.0 0.5 };

lmask = { 0 0,
          1 0,
          0 0,
          0 1 };

phi = { 1.0 0.3,
        0.3 1.0 };

psi = { 0.6 0.0 0.0 0.0,
        0.0 0.6 0.0 0.0,
        0.0 0.0 0.6 0.0,
        0.0 0.0 0.0 0.6 };

tmask = { 1 0 0 0,
          0 1 0 0,
          0 0 1 0,
          0 0 0 1 };

struct PV par0;
par0 = pvCreate;
par0 = pvPackm(par0,lambda,"lambda",lmask);
par0 = pvPacks(par0,phi,"phi");
par0 = pvPacksm(par0,psi,"psi",tmask);

struct SQPsolveMTControl c0;
```

```

c0 = sqpSolveMTcontrolCreate;

lind = pvGetIndex(par0,"lambda"); /* get indices of lambda */
/* parameters in parameter */
/* vector */
tind = pvGetIndex(par0,"psi"); /* get indices of psi */
/* parameters in parameter */
/* vector */

c0.bounds = ones(pvLength(par0),1).*(-1e250~1e250);
c0.bounds[lind,1] = zeros(rows(lind),1);
c0.bounds[lind,2] = 10*ones(rows(lind),1);
c0.bounds[tind,1] = .001*ones(rows(tind),1);
c0.bounds[tind,2] = 100*ones(rows(tind),1);

c0.output = 1;
c0.printIters = 1;
c0.trustRadius = 1;
c0.ineqProc = &ineq;
c0.covType = 1;

struct DS d0;
d0 = dsCreate;
d0.dataMatrix = loadadd("maxfact");

output file = sqpfact.out reset;

struct SQPsolveMTOut out0;
out0 = SQPsolveMT(&lpr,par0,d0,c0);

lambdahat = pvUnpack(out0.par,"lambda");
phihat = pvUnpack(out0.par,"phi");
psihat = pvUnpack(out0.par,"psi");

print "estimates";
print;
print "lambda" lambdahat;

```

```
print;
print "phi" phihat;
print;
print "psi" psihat;

struct PV stderr;
stderr = out0.par;

if not scalmiss(out0.moment);
    stderr = pvPutParVector(stderr,sqrt(diag(out0.moment)));
    lambdase = pvUnpack(stderr,"lambda");
    phise = pvUnpack(stderr,"phi");
    psise = pvUnpack(stderr,"psi");
    print "standard errors";
    print;
    print "lambda" lambdase;
    print;
    print "phi" phise;
    print;
    print "psi" psise;
endif;

output off;

proc lpr(struct PV par1, struct DS data1);
    local lambda,phi,psi,sigma,logl;

    lambda = pvUnpack(par1,"lambda");
    phi = pvUnpack(par1,"phi");
    psi = pvUnpack(par1,"psi");
    sigma = lambda*phi*lambda' + psi;
    logl = -lnpdfmvn(data1.dataMatrix,sigma);

    retp(logl);
endp;

proc ineq(struct PV par1, struct DS data1);
```

```
local lambda,phi,psi,sigma,e;

lambda = pvUnpack(par1,"lambda");
phi = pvUnpack(par1,"phi");
psi = pvUnpack(par1,"psi");
sigma = lambda*phi*lambda' + psi;
e = eigh(sigma) - .001; /* eigenvalues of sigma */
e = e | eigh(phi) - .001; /* eigenvalues of phi */

retp(e);
endp;
```


Run-Time Library Structures 13

Two structures are used by several **GAUSS Run-Time Library** functions for handling parameter vectors and data: the **PV** parameter structure and the **DS** data structure.

13.1 The PV Parameter Structure

The members of an instance of structure of type **PV** are all “private,” that is, not accessible directly to the user. It is designed to handle parameter vectors for threadsafe optimization functions. Entering and receiving parameter vectors, and accessing properties of this vector, are accomplished using special functions.

Suppose you are optimizing a function containing a $K \times L$ matrix of coefficients. The optimization function requires a parameter vector but your function uses a $K \times L$ matrix. Your needs and the needs of the optimization function can be both satisfied by an instance of the structure of type **PV**. For example:

```
struct PV p1;  
p1 = pvCreate;
```

```
x = zeros(4,3); /* on input contains start values, */
                /* on exit contains estimates      */
p1 = pvPack(p1,x,"coefficients");
```

The **pvCreate** function initializes **p1** to default values. **pvPack** enters the 4×3 matrix stored row-wise as a 12×1 parameter vector for the optimization function. The optimization program will pass the instance of the structure of type **PV** to your objective function.

By calling **pvUnpack** your 4×3 coefficient matrix is retrieved from the parameter vector. For example, in your procedure you have

```
x = pvUnpack(p1,"coefficients");
```

and now **x** is a 4×3 matrix of coefficients for your use in calculating the object function.

Suppose that your objective function has parameters to be estimated in a covariance matrix. The covariance matrix is a symmetric matrix where only the lower left portion contains unique values for estimation. To handle this, use **pvPacks**. For example:

```
struct PV p1;
p1 = pvCreate;

cov = { 1 .1 .1,
        .1 1 .1,
        .1 .1 1 };

p1 = pvPacks(p1,cov,"covariance");
```

Only the lower left portion of cov will be stored in the parameter vector. When the covariance matrix is unpacked, the parameters in the parameter vector will be entered into both the lower and upper portions of the matrix.

There may be cases where only a portion of a matrix being used to compute the objective function are parameters to be estimated. In this case use **pvPackm** with a “mask” matrix that contains ones where parameters are to be estimated and zeros otherwise. For example,

```

struct PV p1;
p1 = pvCreate;

cov = { 1  .5,
        .5  1 };

mask = { 0  1,
         1  0 };

p1 = pvPacksm(p1,cov,"correlation",mask);

```

Here only the one element in the lower left of **cov** is stored in the parameter vector. Suppose the optimization program sends a trial value for that parameter of, say, .45. When the matrix is unpacked in your procedure it will contain the fixed values associated with the zeros in the mask as well as the trial value in that part of the matrix associated with the ones. Thus,

```

print unpack(p1,"correlation");

1.0000  .4500
.4500    1.0000

```

A mask may also be used with general matrices to store a portion of a matrix in the parameter vector.

```

struct PV p1;
p1 = pvCreate;

m = { 0  .5  1,
       .5  0  .3 };

mask = { 0  1  1,
         1  0  0 };

p1 = pvPackm(p1,m,"coefficients",mask);

```

A **PV** instance can, of course, hold parameters from all these types of matrices: symmetric, masked symmetric, rectangular, and masked rectangular. For example:

```
lambda = { 1.0  0.0,
           0.5  0.0,
           0.0  1.0,
           0.0  0.5 };
```

```
lmask  = { 0  0,
           1  0,
           0  0,
           0  1 };
```

```
phi = { 1.0  0.3,
        0.3  1.0 };
```

```
theta = { 0.6  0.0  0.0  0.0,
          0.0  0.6  0.0  0.0,
          0.0  0.0  0.6  0.0,
          0.0  0.0  0.0  0.6 };
```

```
tmask = { 1  0  0  0,
          0  1  0  0,
          0  0  1  0,
          0  0  0  1 };
```

```
struct PV par0;
par0 = pvCreate;
par0 = pvPackm(par0,lambda,"lambda",lmask);
par0 = pvPacks(par0,phi,"phi");
par0 = pvPacksm(par0,theta,"theta",tmask);
```

It isn't necessary to know where in the parameter vector the parameters are located in order to use them in your procedure calculating the objective function. Thus:

```
lambda = pvUnpack(par1,"lambda");
```

```

phi = pvUnpack(par1,"phi");
theta = pvUnpack(par1,"theta");
sigma = lambda*phi*lambda' + theta;

```

Additional functions are available to retrieve information on the properties of the parameter vector. **pvGetParVector** and **pvPutParVector** get and put parameter vector from and into the **PV** instance, **pvGetParNames** retrieves names for the elements of the parameter vector, **pvList** returns the list of matrix names in the **PV** instance, **pvLength** the length of the parameter vector.

```

struct PV p1;
p1 = pvCreate;

cov = { 1   .5,
        .5   1 };

mask = { 0 1,
         1 0 };

p1 = pvPacksm(p1,cov,"correlation",mask);
print pvGetParVector(p1);

.5000

p1 = pvPutParVector(p1,.8);
print pvGetParVector(p1);

.8000

print pvUnpack(p1,"correlation");

1.0000   .8000
.8000   1.0000

print pvGetParNames(p1);

correlation[2,1]

```

```
print pvLength(p1);  
  
1.0000
```

Also, **pvTest** tests an instance to make sure it is properly constructed. **pvCreate** generates an initialized instance, and **pvGetIndex** returns the indices of the parameters of an input matrix in the parameter vector. This last function is most useful when constructing linear constraint indices for the optimization programs.

13.2 Fast Pack Functions

Unpacking matrices using matrix names is slow because it requires a string search through a string array of names. A set of special packing functions are provided that avoid the search altogether. These functions use a “table” of indices that you specify to find the matrix in the **PV** instance. For example:

```
struct PV p1;  
p1 = pvCreate;  
  
y = rndn(4,1);  
x = rndn(4,4);  
  
p1 = pvPacki(p1,y,"Y",1);  
p1 = pvPacki(p1,x,"X",2);  
  
print pvUnpack(p1,1);  
  
.3422  
.0407  
.5611  
.0953  
  
print pvUnpack(p1,"Y");
```

```
.3422
.0407
.5611
.0953
```

The call to **pvPacki** puts an entry in the table associating the matrix in its second argument with the index 1. As indicated above the matrix can be unpacked either by index or by name. Unpacking by index, however, is much faster than by name.

Note that the matrix can be unpacked using either the index or the matrix name.

There are index versions of all four of the packing functions, **pvPacki**, **pvPackmi**, **pvPacksi**, and **pvPacksmi**.

13.3 The DS Data Structure

An instance of the **DS** data structure contains the following members:

```
struct DS d0;
```

d0.dataMatrix	M×K matrix, data
d0.dataArray	N-dimensional array, data
d0.type	scalar
d0.dname	string
d0.vnames	string array

The definition and use of the elements of **d0** are determined by the particular application and are mostly up to the user. A typical use might use a vector of structures. For example, suppose the objective function requires a vector of observations on a dependent variable as well as on K independent variables. Then:

```
struct DS d0;  
d0 = dsCreate;  
  
y = rndn(20,1);  
x = rndn(20,5);  
  
d0 = reshape(d0,2,1);  
d0[1].dataMatrix = y;  
d0[2].dataMatrix = X;
```

The **d0** instance would be passed to the optimization program which then passes it to your procedure computing the objective function. For example:

```
proc lpr(struct PV p1, struct DS d1);  
    local u;  
    u = d0[1].dataMatrix - d0[2].dataMatrix * pvUnpack(p1,"beta");  
    retp(u'u);  
endp;
```

A particular application may require setting other members of the **DS** instance for particular purposes, but in general you may use them for your own purposes. For example, **d0.dname** could be set to a **GAUSS** dataset name from which you read the data in the objective function procedure, or **d0.vnames** could be set to the variable names of the columns of the data stored in **d0.dataMatrix**, or **d0.type** could be an indicator variable for the elements of a vector of **DS** instances.

The following are complete examples of the use of the **PV** and **DS** structures. The first example fits a set of data to the Micherlitz model. It illustrates packing and unpacking by index.

```
#include sqpsolvemt.sdf  
  
struct DS Y;  
Y = dsCreate;  
  
Y.dataMatrix = 3.183|
```

```

3.059|
2.871|
2.622|
2.541|
2.184|
2.110|
2.075|
2.018|
1.903|
1.770|
1.762|
1.550;

struct DS X;
X = dsCreate;

X.dataMatrix = seqa(1,1,13);

struct DS Z;
Z = reshape(Z,2,1);
Z[1] = Y;
Z[2] = X;

struct SQPsolveMTControl c1;
c1 = sqpSolveMTControlCreate; /* initializes */
                               /* default values */

c1.bounds = 0~100;             /* constrains parameters */
                               /* to be positive */

c1.CovType = 1;
c1.output = 1;
c1.printIters = 0;
c1.gradProc = &grad;

struct PV par1;
par1 = pvCreate;

```

```
start = { 2, 4, 2 };
par1 = pvPacki(par1,start,"Parameters",1);

struct SQPsolveMTout out1;
out1 = SQPsolveMT(&Micherlitz,par1,Z,c1);

estimates = pvGetParVector(out1.par);
print " parameter estimates ";
print estimates;
print;
print " standard errors ";
print sqrt(diag(out1.moment));

proc Micherlitz(struct PV par1,struct DS Z);
    local p0,e,s2;
    p0 = pvUnpack(par1,1);
    e = Z[1].dataMatrix - p0[1] - p0[2]*exp(-p0[3]
        *Z[2].dataMatrix);
    s2 = moment(e,0)/(rows(e)-1);
    retp( (2/rows(e))*(e.*e/s2 + ln(2*pi*s2)));
endp;

proc grad(struct PV par1, struct DS Z);
    local p0,e,e1,e2,e3,w,g,s2;

    p0 = pvUnpack(par1,1);
    w = exp(-p0[3]*Z[2].dataMatrix);
    e = z[1].dataMatrix - p0[1] - p0[2] * w;
    s2 = moment(e,0) / rows(e);
    e1 = - ones(rows(e),1);
    e2 = -w;
    e3 = p0[2]*Z[2].dataMatrix.*w;
    w = (1 - e.*e / s2) / rows(e);
    g = e.*e1 + w*(e'e1);
    g = g ~ (e.*e2 + w*(e'e2));
    g = g ~ (e.*e3 + w*(e'e3));
```

```
    retp(4*g/(rows(e)*s2));
endp;
```

This example estimates parameters of a “confirmatory factor analysis” model.

```
\#include sqpsolvemt.sdf

lambda = { 1.0  0.0,
           0.5  0.0,
           0.0  1.0,
           0.0  0.5 };

lmask  = { 0  0,
           1  0,
           0  0,
           0  1 };

phi = { 1.0  0.3,
        0.3  1.0 };

theta = { 0.6  0.0  0.0  0.0,
          0.0  0.6  0.0  0.0,
          0.0  0.0  0.6  0.0,
          0.0  0.0  0.0  0.6 };

tmask = { 1  0  0  0,
          0  1  0  0,
          0  0  1  0,
          0  0  0  1 };

struct PV par0;
par0 = pvCreate;

par0 = pvPackm(par0,lambda,"lambda",lmask);
par0 = pvPacks(par0,phi,"phi");
par0 = pvPacksm(par0,theta,"theta",tmask);
```

```
struct SQPsolveMTControl c0;
c0 = sqpSolveMTcontrolCreate;

lind = pvGetIndex(par0,"lambda"); /* get indices of */
                                   /* lambda parameters */
                                   /* in parameter vector */

tind = pvGetIndex(par0,"theta"); /* get indices of */
                                   /* theta parameters */
                                   /* in parameter vector */

c0.bounds = ones(pvLength(par0),1).*(-1e250~1e250);
c0.bounds[lind,1] = zeros(rows(lind),1);
c0.bounds[lind,2] = 10*ones(rows(lind),1);
c0.bounds[tind,1] = .001*ones(rows(tind),1);
c0.bounds[tind,2] = 100*ones(rows(tind),1);

c0.ineqProc = &ineq;
c0.covType = 1;

struct DS d0;
d0 = dsCreate;

d0.dataMatrix = loadadd("maxfact");

struct SQPsolveMTOut out0;
out0 = SQPsolveMT(&lpr,par0,d0,c0);

lambdahat = pvUnpack(out0.par,"lambda");
phihat = pvUnpack(out0.par,"phi");
thetahat = pvUnpack(out0.par,"theta");

print "estimates";
print;
print "lambda" lambdahat;
print;
```

```

print "phi" phihat;
print;
print "theta" thetahat;

struct PV stderr;
stderr = out0.par;

if not scalmiss(out0.moment);
    stderr =
        pvPutParVector(stderr, sqrt(diag(out0.moment)));
    lambdase = pvUnpack(stderr, "lambda");
    phise = pvUnpack(stderr, "phi");
    thetase = pvUnpack(stderr, "theta");

    print "standard errors";
    print;
    print "lambda" lambdase;
    print;
    print "phi" phise;
    print;
    print "theta" thetase;
endif;

proc lpr(struct PV par1, struct DS data1);
    local lambda, phi, theta, sigma, logl;

    lambda = pvUnpack(par1, "lambda");
    phi = pvUnpack(par1, "phi");
    theta = pvUnpack(par1, "theta");
    sigma = lambda*phi*lambda' + theta;
    logl = -lnpdfmvn(data1.dataMatrix, sigma);

    retp(logl);
endp;

```

```
proc ineq(struct PV par1, struct DS data1);
    local lambda,phi,theta,sigma,e;

    lambda = pvUnpack(par1,"lambda");
    phi = pvUnpack(par1,"phi");
    theta = pvUnpack(par1,"theta");
    sigma = lambda*phi*lambda' + theta;

    e = eigh(sigma) - .001; /* eigenvalues of sigma */
    e = e | eigh(phi) - .001; /* eigenvalues of phi */

    retp(e);
endp;
```

Multi-Threaded Programming in GAUSS

14

The term thread comes from the phrase “thread of execution”—simply, it denotes a section of code that you want to execute. A single-threaded program has only one thread of execution, i.e., the program itself. A multi-threaded program is one that can have multiple threads—sections of code—executing *simultaneously*. Since these threads are part of the same program, they share the same workspace, and see and operate on the same symbols. Threads allow you to take full advantage of the hardware processing resources available on hyper-threaded, multi-core, and multi-processor systems, executing independent calculations simultaneously, combining and using the results of their work when done.

14.1 The Functions

GAUSS includes four keywords for multi-threading your programs:

ThreadStat Marks a single statement to be executed as a thread.

ThreadBegin Marks the beginning of a block of code to be executed as a thread.

ThreadEnd Marks the end of a block of code to be executed as a thread.

ThreadJoin Completes the definition of a set of threads, waits until they are done.

ThreadStat defines a single statement to be executed as a thread:

```
ThreadStat n = m'm;
```

ThreadBegin and **ThreadEnd** define a multi-line block of code to be executed as a thread:

```
ThreadBegin;  
    y = x'x;  
    z = y'y;  
ThreadEnd;
```

Together these define *sets* of threads to be executed concurrently:

```
ThreadStat n = m'm;     // Thread 1  
ThreadBegin;            // Thread 2  
    y = x'x;  
    z = y'y;  
ThreadEnd;  
ThreadBegin;            // Thread 3  
    q = r'r;  
    r = q'q;  
ThreadEnd;  
ThreadStat p = o'o;     // Thread 4
```

Finally, **ThreadJoin** completes the definition of a set of threads. It waits for the threads in a set to finish and rejoin the creating (the *parent*) thread, which can then continue, making use of their individual calculations:

```

ThreadBegin;           // Thread 1
    y = x'x;
    z = y'y;
ThreadEnd;
ThreadBegin;           // Thread 2
    q = r'r;
    r = q'q;
ThreadEnd;
ThreadStat n = m'm;    // Thread 3
ThreadStat p = o'o;    // Thread 4
ThreadJoin;            // waits for Threads 1-4 to finish
b = z + r + n'p;       // Using the results

```

14.2 GAUSS Threading Concepts

This is really the one and only thing you need to know about threads: threads are separate sections of the same program, executing simultaneously, operating on the same data. In fact, it's so fundamental it's worth saying again: threads are separate sections of code in a program, running at the same time, using the same workspace, referencing and operating on the same symbols.

This raises basic issues of workflow and data integrity. How do you manage the creation and execution of threads, and make use of the work they do? And how do you maintain data integrity? (You *do not* want two threads assigning to the same symbol at the same time.)

To handle thread workflow, **GAUSS** employs a **split-and-join** approach. At various points in your program (as many as you like), you define a set of threads that will be created and run as a group. When created, the threads in the set execute simultaneously, each doing useful work. The parent thread waits for the created threads to complete, then continues, the results of their work now available for further use.

To maintain data integrity, we introduce the **writer-must-isolate** (informally, the *any-thread-can-read-unless-some-thread-writes*) programming rule. That is to say, symbols that are read from but not assigned to can be referenced by as many threads in a set as you like. Symbols that are assigned to, however, must be *wholly* owned by a single thread. No other thread in the set can reference that symbol. They cannot assign to it, nor can they read from it. They cannot refer to it at all.

Note: the **writer-must-isolate** rule only applies to the threads within a given set (including any child thread sets they may create). It does not apply between thread sets that have no chance of running simultaneously.

For threads defined in the main code, the **writer-must-isolate** rule applies to the global symbols. For threads defined in procedures or keywords, it applies to the global symbols, local symbols, and the procedure/keyword arguments.

14.3 Coding With Threads

There are two main points to coding with threads.

One—you can define threads anywhere. You can define them in the main code, you can define them in **proc**'s and **keyword**'s, and yes, you can define them inside other threads.

Two—you can call **proc**'s and **keyword**'s from threads. This is what really ties everything together. You can call a **proc** from a thread, and that **proc** can create threads, and any of those threads can call **proc**'s, and any of those **proc**'s can create threads, and ... you get the picture.

So—you can do things like this:

```
q = chol(b);
ThreadBegin;
    x = q + m;
    ThreadBegin;
        y = x'x;
        z = q'm;
    ThreadEnd;
    ThreadBegin;
        a = b + x;
        c = a + m;
    ThreadEnd;
ThreadJoin;
q = m'c;
ThreadEnd;
```

```

ThreadBegin;
    ThreadStat r = m'm;
    ThreadStat s = m + inv(b);
    ThreadJoin;
    t = r's;
ThreadEnd;
ThreadJoin;
x = r+s+q+z-t;

```

More importantly, you can do things like this:

```

proc bef(x);
    local y,t;

    ThreadStat y = nof(x);
    ThreadStat t = dof(x'x);
    ThreadJoin;
    t = t+y;

    retp(t);
endp;

proc abr(m);
    local x,y,z,a,b;

    a = m'm;
    ThreadStat x = inv(m);
    ThreadStat y = bef(m);
    ThreadStat z = dne(a);
    ThreadJoin;
    b = chut(x,y,z,a);

    retp(inv(b));
endp;

s = rndn(500,500);

```

```
ThreadStat t = abr(s);
ThreadStat q = abr(s^2);
ThreadStat r = che(s);
ThreadJoin;
w = del(t,q,r);
print w[1:10,1:10];
```

This means you can multi-thread anything you want, and call it from anywhere. You can multi-thread all the **proc**'s and **keyword**'s in your libraries, and call them freely anywhere in your multi-threaded programs.

14.4 Coding Restrictions

A few points on coding restrictions. First, you can't interlace thread definition statements and regular statements. You can't do this:

```
ThreadStat a = b'b;
n = q;
ThreadStat c = d'd;
ThreadJoin;
```

Or this:

```
if k == 1;
    ThreadStat a = b'b;
elseif k == 2;
    ThreadStat a = c'c;
endif;
if j == 1;
    ThreadStat d = e'e;
elseif j == 2;
    ThreadStat d = f'f;
endif;
ThreadJoin;
```

Each set of threads is defined as a group, and always completed by a **ThreadJoin**, like this:

```
n = q;  
ThreadStat a = b'b;  
ThreadStat c = d'd;  
ThreadJoin;
```

And this:

```
ThreadBegin;  
  if k == 1;  
    a = b'b;  
  elseif k == 2;  
    a = c'c;  
  endif;  
ThreadEnd;  
ThreadBegin;  
  if j == 1;  
    d = e'e;  
  elseif j == 2;  
    d = f'f;  
  endif;  
ThreadEnd;  
ThreadJoin;
```

Second—as stated above, you can reference read-only symbols in as many threads within a set as you like, but any symbols that are assigned to must be *wholly* owned by a single thread. A symbol that is assigned to by a thread cannot be written *or read* by any other thread in that set. This is the **writer-must-isolate** rule.

So, you can do this:

```
ThreadStat x = y'y;  
ThreadStat z = y+y;
```

```
ThreadStat a = b-y;  
ThreadJoin;
```

You cannot do this:

```
ThreadStat x = y'y;  
Threadstat z = x'x;  
ThreadStat a = b-y;  
ThreadJoin;
```

This is because the threads within a set run simultaneously. Thus, there is no way of knowing when an assignment to a symbol has taken place, no way of knowing in one thread the “state” of a symbol in another.

Let’s revisit the nested thread example for a minute and see how the **writer-must-isolate** rule applies to it:

```
q = chol(b);           // main code, no threads yet  
ThreadBegin;           // Th1: isolates x,y,z,a,c,q from Th2  
  x = q + m;  
  ThreadBegin;         // Th1.1: isolates y,z from 1.2  
    y = x'x;  
    z = q'm;  
  ThreadEnd;  
  ThreadBegin;         // Th1.2: isolates a,c from 1.1  
    a = b + x;  
    c = a + m;  
  ThreadEnd;  
  ThreadJoin;          // Joins 1.1, 1.2  
  q = m'c;  
ThreadEnd;  
ThreadBegin;           // Th2: isolates r,s,t from Th1  
  ThreadStat r = m'm;  // Th2.1: isolates r from 2.2  
  ThreadStat          // Th2.2: isolates s from 2.1  
    s = m + inv(b);
```

```

ThreadJoin;           // Joins 2.1, 2.1
t = r's;
ThreadEnd;
ThreadJoin;           // Joins Th1, Th2
x = r+s+q+z-t;

```

The main point here is that any symbols a thread *or its children* assign to must be isolated from all the other threads (and their children) of the same nesting level in that set. On the other hand, the children of a thread can freely read/write symbols that are read/written by their parent, because there is no risk of simultaneity; they must only isolate written symbols from their siblings and siblings' offspring.

If you break the **writer-must-isolate** rule, your program (and probably **GAUSS**) will crash. Worse, until it crashes, it will be happily producing indeterminate results.

Finally—the **ThreadEnd** command is what tells a thread to terminate, so you mustn't write code that keeps a thread from reaching it. For example, don't **retp** from the middle of a thread:

```

ThreadStat m = imt( 9 );
ThreadBegin;
  x = q[1];
  if x = 1;
    retp(z);
  else;
    r = z + 2;
  endif;
ThreadEnd;
ThreadJoin;

```

And don't use **goto** to jump into or out of the middle of a thread:

```

retry:
ThreadBegin;
  { err, x } = fna(q);
  if err;

```

```
        goto badidea;
    endif;
    x = fnb(x);
ThreadEnd;
ThreadStat y = fnb(y);
ThreadJoin;
z = fnc(x,y);
save z;
end;

badidea:
    errorlog "Error computing fna(q)";
    q = fnd(q);
    goto retry;
```

Basically, don't do anything that will keep a thread from reaching its **ThreadEnd** command. That's the only way it knows its work is done. **end** and **stop** are okay to call, though—they will bring the program to an end as usual, and terminate all running threads in the process.

(You *can* use **goto** and labels to jump around within a thread—that is, within the confines of a **ThreadBegin/ThreadEnd** pair.)

Libraries 15

The **GAUSS** library system allows for the creation and maintenance of modular programs. The user can create “libraries” of frequently used functions that the **GAUSS** system will automatically find and compile whenever they are referenced in a program.

15.1 Autoloader

The autoloader resolves references to procedures, keywords, matrices, and strings that are not defined in the program from which they are referenced. The autoloader automatically locates and compiles the files containing the symbol definitions that are not resolved during the compilation of the main file. The search path used by the autoloader is first the current directory, and then the paths listed in the **src_path** configuration variable in the order they appear. **src_path** can be defined in the **GAUSS** configuration file.

15.1.1 Forward References

When the compiler encounters a symbol that has not previously been defined, that is called a “forward reference”. **GAUSS** handles forward references in two ways, depending on whether they are “left-hand side” or “right-hand side” references.

Left-Hand Side

A left-hand side reference is usually a reference to a symbol on the left-hand side of the equal sign in an expression.

```
x = 5;
```

Left-hand side references, since they are assignments, are assumed to be matrices. In the statement above, **x** is assumed to be a matrix and the code is compiled accordingly. If, at execution time, the expression actually returns a string, the assignment is made and the type of the symbol **x** is forced to string.

Some commands are implicit left-hand side assignments. There is an implicit left-hand side reference to **x** in each statement below:

```
clear x;  
  
load x;  
  
open x = myfile;
```

Right-Hand Side

A right-hand side reference is usually a reference to a symbol on the right-hand side of the equal sign in an expression such as:

```
z = 6;  
y = z + dog;  
print y;
```

In the program above, since **dog** is not previously known to the compiler, the autoloader will search for it in the active libraries. If it is found, the file containing it will be compiled. If it is not found in a library, the autoload/autodelete state will determine how it is handled.

15.1.2 The Autoloader Search Path

If the autoloader is OFF, no forward references are allowed. Every procedure, matrix, and string referenced by your program must be defined before it is referenced. An **external** statement can be used above the first reference to a symbol, but the definition of the symbol must be in the main file or in one of the files that are **#include**'d. No global symbols are deleted automatically.

If the autoloader is ON, **GAUSS** searches for unresolved symbol references during compilation using a specific search path as outlined below. If the autoloader is OFF, an **Undefined symbol** error message will result for right-hand side references to unknown symbols.

When autoload is ON, the autodelete state controls the handling of references to unknown symbols.

The following search path will be followed to locate any symbols not previously defined:

Autodelete ON

1. user library
2. user-specified libraries.
3. gauss library
4. current directory, then **src_path** for files with a **.g** extension.

Forward references are allowed and **.g** files need not be in a library. If there are symbols that cannot be found in any of the places listed above, an **Undefined symbol** error message will be

generated and all uninitialized variables and all procedures with global references will be deleted from the global symbol table. This autodeletion process is transparent to the user, since the symbols are automatically located by the autoloader the next time the program is run. This process results in more compile time, which may or may not be significant, depending on the speed of the computer and the size of the program.

Autodelete OFF

1. user library
2. user-specified libraries.
3. gauss library

All `.g` files must be listed in a library. Forward references to symbols that are not listed in an active library are not allowed. For example:

```
x = rndn(10,10);
y = sym(x);      /* Forward reference to sym */

proc sym(x);
    retp(x+x');
endp;
```

Use an **external** statement for anything referenced above its definition if autodelete is OFF:

```
external proc sym;

x = rndn(10,10);
y = sym(x);

proc sym(x);
    retp(x+x');
endp;
```

When autodelete is OFF, symbols not found in an active library will not be added to the symbol table. This prevents the creation of uninitialized procedures in the global symbol table. No deletion of symbols from the global symbol table will take place.

Libraries

The first place **GAUSS** looks for a symbol definition is in the “active” libraries. A **GAUSS** library is a text file that serves as a dictionary to the source files that contain the symbol definitions. When a library is active, **GAUSS** will look in it whenever it is looking for a symbol it is trying to resolve. The **library** statement is used to make a library active. Library files should be located in the subdirectory listed in the **lib_path** configuration variable. Library files have an **.lcg** extension.

Suppose you have several procedures that are all related and you want them all defined in the same file. You can create such a file, and, with the help of a library, the autoloader will be able to find the procedures defined in that file whenever they are called.

First, create the file that is to contain your desired procedure definitions. By convention, this file is usually named with a **.src** extension, but you may use any name and any file extension. In this file, put all the definitions of related procedures you wish to use. Here is an example of such a file. It is called **norm.src**:

```
/*
** norm.src
**
** This is a file containing the definitions of three
** procedures which return the norm of a matrix x.
** The three norms calculated are the 1-norm, the
** inf-norm and the E-norm.
**/

proc onenorm(x);
    retp(maxc(sumc(abs(x)))));
endp;

proc infnorm(x);
```

```
        retp(maxc(sumc(abs(x'))));  
    endp;  
  
    proc Enorm(x);  
        retp(sumc(sumc(x.*x)));  
    endp;
```

Next, create a library file that contains the name of the file you want access to, and the list of symbols defined in it. This can be done with the **lib** command. (For details, see **lib** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

A library file entry has a filename that is flush left. The drive and path can be included to speed up the autoloader. Indented below the filename are the symbols included in the file. There can be multiple symbols listed on a line, with spaces between. The symbol type follows the symbol name, with a colon delimiting it from the symbol name. The valid symbol types are:

fn	user-defined single line function.
keyword	keyword.
proc	procedure.
matrix	matrix, numeric or character.
array	N-dimensional array.
string	string.
sparse matrix	sparse matrix.
struct	structure.

A structure is always denoted by **struct** followed by the structure type name.

If the symbol type is missing, the colon must not be present and the symbol type is assumed to be **proc**. Both library files below are valid:

Example 1

```

/*
** math
**
** This library lists files and procedures for mathematical routines.
*/

norm.src
    onenorm:proc infnorm:proc Enorm:proc
complex.src
    cmmult:proc cmdiv:proc cmadd:proc cmsoln:proc
poly.src
    polychar:proc polyroot:proc polymult:proc

```

Example 2

```

/*
** math
**
** This library lists files and procedures for mathematical routines.
*/

c:\gauss\src\norm.src
    onenorm : proc
    infnorm : proc
    Enorm : proc
c:\gauss\src\complex.src
    cmmult : proc
    cmdiv : proc
    cmadd : proc
    cmsoln : proc
c:\gauss\src\fcomp.src
    feq : proc
    fne : proc
    flt : proc
    fgt : proc
    fle : proc

```

```
fge : proc
c:\gauss\src\fcomp.dec
_fcmtol : matrix
```

Once the autoloader finds, via the library, the file containing your procedure definition, everything in that file will be compiled. For this reason, you should combine related procedures in the same file in order to minimize the compiling of procedures not needed by your program. In other words, you should not combine unrelated functions in one `.src` file because if one function in a `.src` file is needed, the whole file will be compiled.

user Library

This is a library for user-created procedures. If the autoloader is ON, the `user` library is the first place **GAUSS** looks when trying to resolve symbol references.

You can update the `user` library with the **lib** command as follows:

```
lib user myfile.src
```

This will update the `user` library by adding a reference to `myfile.src`.

No `user` library is shipped with **GAUSS**. It will be created the first time you use the **lib** command to update it.

For details on the parameters available with the **lib** command, see the **GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE**.

.g Files

If `autoload` and `autodelete` are ON and a symbol is not found in a library, the autoloader will assume it is a procedure and look for a file that has the same name as the symbol and a `.g` extension. For example, if you have defined a procedure called **square**, you could put the definition in a file called `square.g` in one of the subdirectories listed in your **src_path**. If `autodelete` is OFF, the `.g` file must be listed in an active library; for example, in the `user` library.

15.2 Global Declaration Files

If your application makes use of several global variables, create a file containing **declare** statements. Use files with the extension `.dec` to assign default values to global matrices and strings with **declare** statements and to **declare** global N-dimensional arrays, sparse matrices, and structures, which will be initialized as follows:

Variable Type	Initializes To
N-dimensional array	1-dimensional array of 1 containing 0
sparse matrix	empty sparse matrix
structure	1×1 structure containing empty and/or zeroed out members

In order to **declare** structures in a `.dec` file, you must **#include** the file(s) containing the definitions of the types of structures that you wish to **declare** at the top of your `.dec` file. For example, if you have the following structure type definition in a file called **mystruct.sdf**:

```
struct mystruct {
    matrix m;
    array a;
    scalar scal;
    string array sa;
};
```

You could **declare** an instance of that structure type, called **ms**, in a `.dec` file as follows:

```
#include mystruct.sdf

declare struct mystruct ms;
```

See **declare** in the `COMMAND REFERENCE`, Chapter 29, for more information.

A file with a `.ext` extension containing the same symbols in **external** statements can also be created and **#include**'d at the top of any file that references these global variables. An

appropriate library file should contain the name of the .dec files and the names of the globals they declare. This allows you to reference global variables across source files in an application.

Here is an example that illustrates the way in which .dec, .ext, .lcg and .src files work together. Always begin the names of global matrices or strings with '_' to distinguish them from procedures.

.src File:

```
/*
** fcomp.src
**
** These functions use _fcmtol to fuzz the comparison operations
** to allow for roundoff error.
**
** The statement:      y = feq(a,b);
**
** is equivalent to:   y = a eq b;
**
** Returns a scalar result, 1 (true) or 0 (false)
**
**      y = feq(a,b);
**      y = fne(a,b);
**/

#include fcomp.ext

proc feq(a,b);
    retp(abs(a-b) <= _fcmtol);
endp;

proc fne(a,b);
    retp(abs(a-b) > _fcmtol);
endp;
```

.dec File:

```
/*
** fcomp.dec - global declaration file for fuzzy comparisons.
*/

declare matrix _fcmptol != 1e-14;
```

.ext File:

```
/*
** fcomp.ext - external declaration file for fuzzy comparisons.
*/

external matrix _fcmptol;
```

.lcg File:

```
/*
** fcomp.lcg - fuzzy compare library
*/

fcomp.dec
    _fcmptol:matrix
fcomp.src
    feq:proc
    fne:proc
```

With the exception of the library (.lcg) files, these files must be located along your **src_path**. The library files must be on your **lib_path**. With these files in place, the autoloader will be able to find everything needed to run the following programs:

```
library fcomp;
x = rndn(3,3);
xi = inv(x);
```

```
xix = xi*x;
if feq(xix,eye(3));
    print "Inverse within tolerance.";
else;
    print "Inverse not within tolerance.";
endif;
```

If the default tolerance of 1e-14 is too tight, the tolerance can be relaxed:

```
library fcomp;
x = rndn(3,3);
xi = inv(x);
xix = xi*x;
_fcmtol = 1e-12;    /* reset tolerance */
if feq(xix,eye(3));
    print "Inverse within tolerance.";
else;
    print "Inverse not within tolerance.";
endif;
```

15.3 Troubleshooting

Below is a partial list of errors you may encounter in using the library system, followed by the most probable cause.

(4) : error G0290 : '/gauss/lib/prt.lcg' : Library not found

The autoloader is looking for a library file called `prt.lcg`, because it has been activated in a **library** statement. Check the subdirectory listed in your **lib_path** configuration variable for a file called `prt.lcg`.

(0) : error G0292 : 'prt.dec' : File listed in library not found

The autoloader cannot find a file called `prt.dec`. Check for this file. It should exist somewhere along your **src_path**, if you have it listed in `prt.lcg`.

Undefined symbols:

PRTVEC /gauss/src/tstprt.g(2)

The symbol **prtvec** could not be found. Check if the file containing **prtvec** is in the **src_path**. You may have not activated the library that contains your symbol definition. Do so in a **library** statement.

/gauss/src/prt.dec(3) : Redefinition of '__vnames' (proc)__vnames being declared external matrix

You are trying to illegally force a symbol to another type. You probably have a name conflict that needs to be resolved by renaming one of the symbols.

/gauss/lib/prt.lcg(5) : error G0301 : 'prt.dec' : Syntax error in library

Undefined symbols:

__VNAMES /gauss/src/prt.src(6)

Check your library to see that all filenames are flush left and that all the symbols defined in that file are indented by at least one space.

15.3.1 Using .dec Files

Below is some advice you are encouraged to follow when constructing your own library system:

- Whenever possible, declare variables in a file that contains only **declare** statements. When your program is run again without clearing the workspace, the file containing the variable declarations will not be compiled and **declare** warnings will be prevented.
- Provide a function containing regular assignment statements to reinitialize the global variables in your program if they ever need to be reinitialized during or between runs. Put this in a separate file from the declarations:

```
proc (0) = globset;  
    _vname = "X";  
    _con = 1;  
    _row = 0;  
    _title = "";  
endp;
```

- Never declare any global in more than one file.
- To avoid meaningless redefinition errors and **declare** warnings, never declare a global more than once in any one file. Redefinition error messages and **declare** warnings are meant to help you prevent name conflicts, and will be useless to you if your code generates them normally.

By following these guidelines, any **declare** warnings and redefinition errors you get will be meaningful. By knowing that such warnings and errors are significant, you will be able to debug your programs more efficiently.

Compiler 16

GAUSS allows you to compile your large, frequently used programs to a file that can be run over and over with no compile time. The compiled image is usually smaller than the uncompiled source. **GAUSS** is not a native code compiler; rather, it compiles to a form of pseudocode. The file will have a `.gcg` extension.

The **compile** command will compile an entire program to a compiled file. An attempt to edit a compiled file will cause the source code to be loaded into the editor if it is available to the system. The **run** command assumes a compiled file if no extension is given, and that a file with a `.gcg` extension is in the **src_path**. A **saveall** command is available to save the current contents of memory in a compiled file for instant recall later. The **use** command will instantly load a compiled program or set of procedures at the beginning of an ASCII program before compiling the rest of the ASCII program file.

Since the compiled files are encoded binary files, the compiler is useful for developers who do not want to distribute their source code.

16.1 Compiling Programs

Programs are compiled with the **compile** command.

16.1.1 Compiling a File

Source code program files that can be run with the **run** command can be compiled to .gcg files with the **compile** command:

```
compile qxy.e;
```

All procedures, global matrices, arrays, strings and string arrays, and the main program segment will be saved in the compiled file. The compiled file can be run later using the **run** command. Any libraries used in the program must be present and active during the compile, but not when the program is run. If the program uses the **dlibrary** command, the .dll files must be present when the program is run and the **dlibrary** path must be set to the correct subdirectory. This will be handled automatically in your configuration file. If the program is run on a different computer than it was compiled on, the .dll files must be present in the correct location. **sysstate** (case 24) can be used to set the **dlibrary** path at run-time.

16.2 Saving the Current Workspace

The simplest way to create a compiled file containing a set of frequently used procedures is to use **saveall** and an **external** statement:

```
library pgraph;  
external proc xy,logx,logy,loglog,hist;  
saveall pgraph;
```

Just list the procedures you will be using in an **external** statement and follow it with a **saveall** statement. It is not necessary to list procedures that you do not explicitly call, but are called from

another procedure, because the autoloader will automatically find them before the **saveall** command is executed. Nor is it necessary to list every procedure you will be calling, unless the source will not be available when the compiled file is **use**'d.

Remember, the list of active libraries is NOT saved in the compiled file, so you may still need a **library** statement in a program that is **use**'ing a compiled file.

16.3 Debugging

If you are using compiled code in a development situation in which debugging is important, compile the file with line number records. After the development is over, you can recompile without line number records if the maximum possible execution speed is important. If you want to guarantee that all procedures contain line number records, put a **new** statement at the top of your program and turn line number tracking on.

File I/O 17

The following is a partial list of the I/O commands in the **GAUSS** programming language:

close	Close a file.
closeall	Close all open files.
colsf	Number of columns in a file.
create	Create GAUSS data set.
eof	Test for end of file.
fcheckerr	Check error status of a file.
fclearerr	Check error status of a file and clear error flag.
fflush	Flush a file's output buffer.
fgets	Read a line of text from a file.
fgetsa	Read multiple lines of text from a file.

fgetsat	Read multiple lines of text from a file, discarding newlines.
fgetst	Read a line of text from a file, discarding newline.
fileinfo	Return names and information of files matching a specification.
files	Return a directory listing as a character matrix.
filesa	Return a list of files matching a specification.
fopen	Open a file.
fputs	Write strings to a file.
fputst	Write strings to a file, appending newlines.
fseek	Reposition file pointer.
fstreerror	Get explanation of last file I/O error.
ftell	Get position of file pointer.
getf	Load a file into a string.
getname	Get variable names from data set.
iscplx	Return whether a data set is real or complex.
load	Load matrix file or small ASCII file (same as loadm).
loadd	Load a small GAUSS data set into a matrix.
loadm	Load matrix file or small ASCII file.
loads	Load string file.
open	Open a GAUSS data set.
output	Control printing to an auxiliary output file or device.
readr	Read a specified number of rows from a file.
rowsf	Number of rows in file.
save	Save matrices, strings, procedures.

saved	Save a matrix in a GAUSS data set.
seekr	Reset read/write pointer in a data set.
sortd	Sort a data set.
typef	Return type of data set (bytes per element).
writer	Write data to a data set.

17.1 ASCII Files

GAUSS has facilities for reading and writing ASCII files. Since most software can also read and write ASCII files, this provides one method of sharing data between **GAUSS** and many other kinds of programs.

17.1.1 Matrix Data

Reading

Files containing numeric data that are delimited with spaces or commas and are small enough to fit into a single matrix or string can be read with **load**. Larger ASCII data files can be converted to **GAUSS** data sets with the ATOG utility program (see ATOG, Chapter 24). ATOG can convert packed ASCII files as well as delimited files.

For small delimited data files, the **load** statement can be used to load the data directly into a **GAUSS** matrix. The resulting **GAUSS** matrix must be no larger than the limit for a single matrix.

For example,

```
load x[] = dat1.asc;
```

will load the data in the file `dat1.asc` into an $N \times 1$ matrix **x**. This method is preferred because **rows(x)** can be used to determine how many elements were actually loaded, and the matrix can be **reshape**'d to the desired form:

```
load x[] = dat1.asc;
if rows(x) eq 500;
    x = reshape(x,100,5);
else;
    errorlog "Read Error";
end;
endif;
```

For quick interactive loading without error checking, use

```
load x[100,5] = dat1.asc;
```

This will load the data into a 100×5 matrix. If there are more or fewer than 500 numbers in the data set, the matrix will automatically be reshaped to 100×5.

Writing

To write data to an ASCII file the **print** or **printfm** command is used to print to the auxiliary output. The resulting files are standard ASCII files and can be edited with **GAUSS**'s editor or another text editor.

The **output** and **outwidth** commands are used to control the auxiliary output. The **print** or **printfm** command is used to control what is sent to the output file.

The window can be turned on and off using **screen**. When printing a large amount of data to the auxiliary output, the window can be turned off using the command

```
screen off;
```

This will make the process much faster, especially if the auxiliary output is a disk file.

It is easy to forget to turn the window on again. Use the **end** statement to terminate your programs; **end** will automatically perform **screen on** and **output off**.

The following commands can be used to control printing to the auxiliary output:

format	Specify format for printing a matrix.
output	Open, close, rename auxiliary output file or device.
outwidth	Set auxiliary output width.
printfm	Formatted matrix print.
print	Print matrix or string.
screen	Turn printing to the window on and off.

This example illustrates printing a matrix to a file:

```
format /rd 8,2;
outwidth 132;
output file = myfile.asc reset;
screen off;
print x;
output off;
screen on;
```

The numbers in the matrix **x** will be printed with a field width of 8 spaces per number, and with 2 places beyond the decimal point. The resulting file will be an ASCII data file. It will have 132 column lines maximum.

A more extended example follows. This program will write the contents of the **GAUSS** file **mydata.dat** into an ASCII file called **mydata.asc**. If there is an existing file by the name of **mydata.asc**, it will be overwritten:

```
output file = mydata.asc reset;
screen off;
format /rd 1,8;
open fp = mydata;
do until eof(fp);
    print readr(fp,200);;
```

```
endo;  
fp = close(fp);  
end;
```

The **output ... reset** command will create an auxiliary output file called `mydata.asc` to receive the output. The window is turned off to speed up the process. The **GAUSS** data file `mydata.dat` is opened for reading and 200 rows are read per iteration until the end of the file is reached. The data read are printed to the auxiliary output `mydata.asc` only, because the window is off.

17.1.2 General File I/O

getf will read a file and return it in a string variable. Any kind of file can be read in this way as long as it will fit into a single string variable.

To read files sequentially, use **fopen** to open the file and use **fgets**, **fputs**, and associated functions to read and write the file. The current position in a file can be determined with **ftell**. The following example uses these functions to copy an ASCII text file:

```
proc copy(src, dest);  
    local fin, fout, str;  
  
    fin = fopen(src, "rb");  
    if not fin;  
        retp(1);  
    endif;  
  
    fout = fopen(dest, "wb");  
    if not fin;  
        call close(fin);  
        retp(2);  
    endif;  
  
    do until eof(fin);
```

```

        str = fgets(fin, 1024);
        if fputs(fout, str) /= 1;
            call close(fin);
            call close(fout);
            retp(3);
        endif;
    endo;

    call close(fin);
    call close(fout);
    retp(0);
endp;

```

17.2 Data Sets

GAUSS data sets are the preferred method of storing data contained in a single matrix for use within **GAUSS**. Use of these data sets allows extremely fast reading and writing of data. Many library functions are designed to read data from these data sets.

If you want to store multiple variables of various types in a single file, see **GAUSS DATA ARCHIVES**, Section 17.3.

17.2.1 Layout

GAUSS data sets are arranged as matrices; that is, they are organized in terms of rows and columns. The columns in a data file are assigned names, and these names are stored in the header, or, in the case of the **v89** format, in a separate header file.

The limit on the number of rows in a **GAUSS** data set is determined by disk size. The limit on the number of columns is limited by RAM. Data can be stored in 2, 4, or 8 bytes per number, rather than just 8 bytes as in the case of **GAUSS** matrix files.

The ranges of the different formats are:

Bytes	Type	Significant Digits	Range
2	integer	4	$-32768 \leq X \leq 32767$
4	single	6-7	$8.43\text{E-}37 \leq |X| \leq 3.37\text{E+}38$
8	double	15-16	$4.19\text{E-}307 \leq |X| \leq 1.67\text{E+}308$

17.2.2 Creating Data Sets

Data sets can be created with the **create** or **datacreate** command. The names of the columns, the type of data, etc., can be specified. (For details, see **create** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

Data sets, unlike matrices, cannot change from real to complex, or vice-versa. Data sets are always stored a row at a time. The rows of a complex data set, then, have the real and imaginary parts interleaved, element by element. For this reason, you cannot write rows from a complex matrix to a real data set—there is no way to interleave the data without rewriting the entire data set. If you must, explicitly convert the rows of data first, using the **real** and **imag** functions (see the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE), and then write them to the data set. Rows from a real matrix CAN be written to a complex data set; GAUSS simply supplies 0's for the imaginary part.

To create a complex data set, include the **complex** flag in your **create** command.

17.2.3 Reading and Writing

The basic functions in GAUSS for reading data files are **open** and **readr**:

```
open f1 = dat1;  
x = readr(f1,100);
```

The call to **readr** in this example will read in 100 rows from `dat1.dat`. The data will be assigned to a matrix **x**.

loadd and **saved** can be used for loading and saving small data sets.

The following example illustrates the creation of a **GAUSS** data file by merging (horizontally concatenating) two existing data sets:

```
file1 = "dat1";
file2 = "dat2";
outfile = "daty";
open fin1 = ^file1 for read;
open fin2 = ^file2 for read;
varnames = getname(file1)|getname(file2);
otyp = maxc(typef(fin1)|typef(fin2));
create fout = ^outfile with ^varnames,0,otyp;
nr = 400;
do until eof(fin1) or eof(fin2);
    y1 = readr(fin1,nr);
    y2 = readr(fin2,nr);
    r = maxc(rows(y1)|rows(y2));
    y = y1[1:r,.] ~ y2[1:r,.];
    call writer(fout,y);
end;
closeall fin1,fin2,fout;
```

In this example, data sets `dat1.dat` and `dat2.dat` are opened for reading. The variable names from each data set are read using **getname**, and combined in a single vector called **varnames**. A variable called **otyp** is created, which will be equal to the larger of the two data types of the input files. This will insure that the output is not rounded to less precision than the input files. A new data set `daty.dat` is created using the **create ... with ...** command. Then, on every iteration of the loop, 400 rows are read in from each of the two input data sets, horizontally concatenated, and written out to `daty.dat`. When the end of one of the input files is reached, reading and writing will stop. The **closeall** command is used to close all files.

17.2.4 Distinguishing Character and Numeric Data

Although **GAUSS** itself does not distinguish between numeric and character columns in a matrix or data set, some of the **GAUSS** Application programs do. When creating a data set, it is important to indicate the type of data in the various columns. The following discusses two ways of doing this.

Using Type Vectors

The **v89** data set format distinguished between character and numeric data in data sets by the case of the variable names associated with the columns. The **v96** data set format, however, stores this type information separately, resulting in a much cleaner and more robust method of tracking variable types, and greater freedom in the naming of data set variables.

When you create a data set, you can supply a vector indicating the type of data in each column of the data set. For example:

```
data = { M 32  21500,
         F 27  36000,
         F 28  19500,
         M 25  32000 };
vnames = { "Sex" "Age" "Pay" };
vtypes = { 0 1 1 };
create f = mydata with ^vnames, 3, 8, vtypes;
call writer(f,data);
f = close(f);
```

To retrieve the type vector, use **vartypef**.

```
open f = mydata for read;
vn = getnamef(f);
vt = vartypef(f);
print vn';
print vt';
```

Sex	Age	Pay
0	1	1

The call to **getnamef** in this example returns a string array rather than a character vector, so you can print it without the '\$' prefix.

Using the Uppercase/Lowercase Convention (v89 Data Sets)

Historically, some **GAUSS** Application programs recognized an “uppercase/lowercase” convention: if the variable name was uppercase, the variable was assumed to be numeric, and if it was lowercase, the variable was assumed to be character.

However, this is now obsolete; use **vartypef** and **v96** data sets to be compatible with future versions.

17.3 GAUSS Data Archives

The **GAUSS** Data Archive (GDA) is extremely powerful and flexible, giving you much greater control over how you store your data. There is no limitation on the number of variables that can be stored in a GDA, and the only size limitation is the amount of available disk space. Moreover, GDA's are designed to hold whatever type of data you want to store in them. You may write matrices, arrays, strings, string arrays, sparse matrices, and structures to a GDA, and the GDA will keep track of the type, size and location of each of the variables contained in it. Since **GAUSS** now supports reading and writing to GDA's that were created on other platforms, GDA's provide a simple solution to the problem of sharing data across platforms.

See Section 17.5.12 for information on the layout of a GDA.

17.3.1 Creating and Writing Variables to GDA's

To create a **GAUSS** Data Archive, call **gdaCreate**, which creates a GDA containing only header information. It is recommended that file names passed into **gdaCreate** have a **.gda** extension; however, **gdaCreate** will not force an extension.

To write variables to the GDA, you must call **gdaWrite**. A single call to **gdaWrite** writes only one variable to the GDA. Writing multiple variables requires multiple calls to **gdaWrite**.

For example, the following code:

```
ret = gdaCreate("myfile.gda",1);
```

```
ret = gdaWrite("myfile.gda",rndn(100,50),"x1");
ret = gdaWrite("myfile.gda","This is a string","str1");
ret = gdaWrite("myfile.gda",394,"x2");
```

produces a GDA containing the following variables:

Index	Name	Type	Size
1	x1	matrix	100 × 50
2	str1	string	16 chars
3	x2	matrix	1 × 1

17.3.2 Reading Variables from GDA's

The following table details the commands that you may use to read various types of variables from a **GAUSS** Data Archive:

Variable Type	Read Command(s)
matrix	gdaRead gdaReadByIndex
array	
string	
string array	
sparse matrix	gdaReadSparse
structure	gdaReadStruct

gdaRead, **gdaReadSparse**, and **gdaReadStruct** take a variable name and return the variable data. **gdaReadByIndex** returns the variable data for a specified variable index.

For example, to get the variable **x1** out of `myfile.gda`, you could call:

```
y = gdaRead("myfile.gda","x1");
```

or

```
y = gdaReadByIndex("myfile.gda",1);
```

If you want to read only a part of a matrix, array, string, or string array from a GDA, call **gdaReadSome**. Sparse matrices and structures may not be read in parts.

17.3.3 Updating Variables in GDA's

To overwrite an entire variable in a GDA, you may call **gdaUpdate** or **gdaUpdateAndPack**. If the new variable is not the same size as the variable that it is replacing, **gdaUpdate** will leave empty bytes in the file, while **gdaUpdateAndPack** will pack the file (from the location of the variable that is being replaced to the end of the file) to remove those empty bytes.

gdaUpdate is usually faster, since it does not move data in the file unnecessarily. However, calling **gdaUpdate** several times for one file may result in a file with a large number of empty bytes.

On the other hand, **gdaUpdateAndPack** uses disk space efficiently, but it may be slow for large files (especially if the variable to be updated is one of the first variables in the file).

If speed and disk space are both concerns and you are going to update several variables, it will be most efficient to use **gdaUpdate** to update the variables and then call **gdaPack** once at the end to pack the file.

The syntax is the same for both **gdaUpdate** and **gdaUpdateAndPack**:

```
ret = gdaUpdate("myfile.gda",rndn(1000,100),"x1");
```

```
ret = gdaUpdateAndPack("myfile.gda",rndn(1000,100),"x1");
```

To overwrite part of a variable in a GDA, call **gdaWriteSome**.

17.4 Matrix Files

GAUSS matrix files are files created by the **save** command.

The **save** command takes a matrix in memory, adds a header that contains information on the number of rows and columns in the matrix, and stores it on disk. Numbers are stored in double precision just as they are in matrices in memory. These files have the extension **.fmt**.

Matrix files can be no larger than a single matrix. No variable names are associated with matrix files.

GAUSS matrix files can be **load**'ed into memory using the **load** or **loadm** command or they can be opened with the **open** command and read with the **readr** command. With the **readr** command, a subset of the rows can be read. With the **load** command, the entire matrix is **load**'ed.

GAUSS matrix files can be **open**'ed **for read**, but not **for append**, or **for update**.

If a matrix file has been opened and assigned a file handle, **rowsf** and **colsf** can be used to determine how many rows and columns it has without actually reading it into memory. **seekr** and **readr** can be used to jump to particular rows and to read them into memory. This is useful when only a subset of rows is needed at any time. This procedure will save memory and be much faster than **load**'ing the entire matrix into memory.

17.5 File Formats

This section discusses the **GAUSS** binary file formats.

There are four currently supported matrix file formats:

Version	Extension	Support
Small Matrix v89	.fmt	Obsolete, use v96 .
Extended Matrix v89	.fmt	Obsolete, use v96 .
Matrix v92	.fmt	Obsolete, use v96 .
Universal Matrix v96	.fmt	Supported for read/write.

There are four currently supported string file formats:

Version	Extension	Support
Small String v89	.fst	Obsolete, use v96.
Extended String v89	.fst	Obsolete, use v96.
String v92	.fst	Obsolete, use v96.
Universal String v96	.fst	Supported for read/write.

There are four currently supported data set formats:

Version	Extension	Support
Small Data Set v89	.dat, .dht	Obsolete, use v96.
Extended Data Set v89	.dat, .dht	Obsolete, use v96.
Data Set v92	.dat	Obsolete, use v96.
Universal Data Set v96	.dat	Supported for read/write.

17.5.1 Small Matrix v89 (Obsolete)

Matrix files are binary files, and cannot be read with a text editor. They are created with **save**. Matrix files with up to 8190 elements have a .fmt extension and a 16-byte header formatted as follows:

Offset	Description
0-1	DDDD hex, identification flag
2-3	rows, unsigned 2-byte integer
4-5	columns, unsigned 2-byte integer
6-7	size of file minus 16-byte header, unsigned 2-byte integer
8-9	type of file, 0086 hex for real matrices, 8086 hex for complex matrices
10-15	reserved, all 0's

The body of the file starts at offset 16 and consists of IEEE format double precision floating point numbers or character elements of up to 8 characters. Character elements take up 8 bytes and are padded on the right with zeros. The size of the body of the file is 8*rows*cols rounded up to the next 16-byte paragraph boundary. Numbers are stored row by row. A 2x3 real matrix will be

stored on disk in the following way, from the lowest addressed element to the highest addressed element:

[1, 1] [1, 2] [1, 3] [2, 1] [2, 2] [2, 3]

For complex matrices, the size of the body of the file is 16*rows*cols. The entire real part of the matrix is stored first, then the entire imaginary part. A 2×3 complex matrix will be stored on disk in the following way, from the lowest addressed element to the highest addressed element:

(*real part*) [1, 1] [1, 2] [1, 3] [2, 1] [2, 2] [2, 3]
(*imaginary part*) [1, 1] [1, 2] [1, 3] [2, 1] [2, 2] [2, 3]

17.5.2 Extended Matrix v89 (Obsolete)

Matrices with more than 8190 elements are saved in an extended format. These files have a 16-byte header formatted as follows:

Offset	Description
0-1	EEDD hex, identification flag
2-3	type of file, 0086 hex for real matrices, 8086 hex for complex matrices
4-7	rows, unsigned 4-byte integer
8-11	columns, unsigned 4-byte integer
12-15	size of file minus 16-byte header, unsigned 4-byte integer

The size of the body of an extended matrix file is 8*rows*cols (not rounded up to a paragraph boundary). Aside from this, the body is the same as the small matrix **v89** file.

17.5.3 Small String v89 (Obsolete)

String files are created with **save**. String files with up to 65519 characters have a 16-byte header formatted as follows:

Offset	Description
0-1	DFDF hex, identification flag
2-3	1, unsigned 2-byte integer
4-5	length of string plus null byte, unsigned 2-byte integer
6-7	size of file minus 16-byte header, unsigned 2-byte integer
8-9	001D hex, type of file
10-15	reserved, all 0's

The body of the file starts at offset 16. It consists of the string terminated with a null byte. The size of the file is the 16-byte header plus the length of the string and null byte rounded up to the next 16-byte paragraph boundary.

17.5.4 Extended String v89 (Obsolete)

Strings with more than 65519 characters are saved in an extended format. These files have a 16-byte header formatted as follows:

Offset	Description
0-1	EEDF hex, identification flag
2-3	001D hex, type of file
4-7	1, unsigned 4-byte integer
8-11	length of string plus null byte, unsigned 4-byte integer
12-15	size of file minus 16-byte header, unsigned 4-byte integer

The body of the file starts at offset 16. It consists of the string terminated with a null byte. The size of the file is the 16-byte header plus the length of the string and null byte rounded up to the next 8-byte boundary.

17.5.5 Small Data Set v89 (Obsolete)

All data sets are created with **create.v89** data sets consist of two files; one **.dht** contains the header information; the second (**.dat**) contains the binary data. The data will be one of three types:

8-byte IEEE floating point
4-byte IEEE floating point
2-byte signed binary integer, twos complement

Numbers are stored row by row.

The `.dht` file is used in conjunction with the `.dat` file as a descriptor file and as a place to store names for the columns in the `.dat` file. Data sets with up to 8175 columns have a `.dht` file formatted as follows:

Offset	Description
0-1	DADA hex, identification flag
2-5	reserved, all 0's
6-7	columns, unsigned 2-byte integer
8-9	row size in bytes, unsigned 2-byte integer
10-11	header size in bytes, unsigned 2-byte integer
12-13	data type in <code>.dat</code> file (2 4 8), unsigned 2-byte integer
14-17	reserved, all 0's
18-21	reserved, all 0's
22-23	control flags, unsigned 2-byte integer
24-127	reserved, all 0's

Column names begin at offset 128 and are stored 8 bytes each in ASCII format. Names with less than 8 characters are padded on the right with bytes of 0.

The number of rows in the `.dat` file is calculated in **GAUSS** using the file size, columns, and data type. This means that users can modify the `.dat` file by adding or deleting rows with other software without updating the header information.

Names for the columns should be lowercase for character data, to be able to distinguish them from numeric data with **vartype**.

GAUSS currently examines only the 4's bit of the control flags. This bit is set to 0 for real data sets, 1 for complex data sets. All other bits are 0.

Data sets are always stored a row at a time. A real data set with 2 rows and 3 columns will be stored on disk in the following way, from the lowest addressed element to the highest addressed

element:

[1, 1] [1, 2] [1, 3]
[2, 1] [2, 2] [2, 3]

The rows of a complex data set are stored with the real and imaginary parts interleaved, element by element. A 2×3 complex data set, then, will be stored on disk in the following way, from the lowest addressed element to the highest addressed element:

[1, 1]*r* [1, 1]*i* [1, 2]*r* [1, 2]*i* [1, 3]*r* [1, 3]*i*
[2, 1]*r* [2, 1]*i* [2, 2]*r* [2, 2]*i* [2, 3]*r* [2, 3]*i*

17.5.6 Extended Data Set v89 (Obsolete)

Data sets with more than 8175 columns are saved in an extended format that cannot be read by the 16-bit version. These files have a .dht descriptor file formatted as follows:

Offset	Description
0-1	EEDA hex, identification flag
2-3	data type in .dat file (2 4 8), unsigned 2-byte integer
4-7	reserved, all 0's
8-11	columns, unsigned 4-byte integer
12-15	row size in bytes, unsigned 4-byte integer
16-19	header size in bytes, unsigned 4-byte integer
20-23	reserved, all 0's
24-27	reserved, all 0's
28-29	control flags, unsigned 2-byte integer
30-127	reserved, all 0's

Aside from the differences in the descriptor file and the number of columns allowed in the data file, extended data sets conform to the **v89** data set description specified above.

17.5.7 Matrix v92 (Obsolete)

Offset	Description
0-3	always 0
4-7	always 0xEECDCDCD
8-11	reserved
12-15	reserved
16-19	reserved
20-23	0 - real matrix, 1 - complex matrix
24-27	number of dimensions
	0 - scalar
	1 - row vector
	2 - column vector, matrix
28-31	header size, 128 + number of dimensions * 4, padded to 8-byte boundary
32-127	reserved

If the data is a scalar, the data will directly follow the header.

If the data is a row vector, an unsigned integer equaling the number of columns in the vector will precede the data, along with 4 padding bytes.

If the data is a column vector or a matrix, there will be two unsigned integers preceding the data. The first will represent the number of rows in the matrix and the second will represent the number of columns.

The data area always begins on an even 8-byte boundary. Numbers are stored in double precision (8 bytes per element, 16 if complex). For complex matrices, all of the real parts are stored first, followed by all the imaginary parts.

17.5.8 String v92 (Obsolete)

Offset	Description
0-3	always 0
4-7	always 0xEECFCFCF

Offset	Description
8-11	reserved
12-15	reserved
16-19	reserved
20-23	size of string in units of 8 bytes
24-27	length of string plus null terminator in bytes
28-127	reserved

The size of the data area is always divisible by 8, and is padded with nulls if the length of the string is not evenly divisible by 8. If the length of the string is evenly divisible by 8, the data area will be the length of the string plus 8. The data area follows immediately after the 128-byte header.

17.5.9 Data Set v92 (Obsolete)

Offset	Description
0-3	always 0
4-7	always 0xEECACACA
8-11	reserved
12-15	reserved
16-19	reserved
20-23	rows in data set
24-27	columns in data set
28-31	0 - real data set, 1 - complex data set
32-35	type of data in data set, 2, 4, or 8
36-39	header size in bytes is 128 + columns * 9
40-127	reserved

The variable names begin at offset 128 and are stored 8 bytes each in ASCII format. Each name corresponds to one column of data. Names less than 8 characters are padded on the right with bytes of zero.

The variable type flags immediately follow the variable names. They are 1-byte binary integers, one per column, padded to an even 8-byte boundary. A 1 indicates a numeric variable and a 0 indicates a character variable.

The contents of the data set follow the header and start on an 8-byte boundary. Data is either 2-byte signed integer, 4-byte single precision floating point or 8-byte double precision floating point.

17.5.10 Matrix v96

Offset	Description
0-3	always 0xFFFFFFFF
4-7	always 0
8-11	always 0xFFFFFFFF
12-15	always 0
16-19	always 0xFFFFFFFF
20-23	0xFFFFFFFF for forward byte order, 0 for backward byte order
24-27	0xFFFFFFFF for forward bit order, 0 for backward bit order
28-31	always 0xABCDEF01
32-35	currently 1
36-39	reserved
40-43	floating point type, 1 for IEEE 754
44-47	1008 (double precision data)
48-51	8, the size in bytes of a double matrix
52-55	0 - real matrix, 1 - complex matrix
56-59	1 - imaginary part of matrix follows real part (standard GAUSS style) 2 - imaginary part of each element immediately follows real part (FORTRAN style)
60-63	number of dimensions 0 - scalar 1 - row vector 2 - column vector or matrix
64-67	1 - row major ordering of elements, 2 - column major
68-71	always 0
72-75	header size, 128 + dimensions * 4, padded to 8-byte boundary
76-127	reserved

If the data is a scalar, the data will directly follow the header.

If the data is a row vector, an unsigned integer equaling the number of columns in the vector will

precede the data, along with 4 padding bytes.

If the data is a column vector or a matrix, there will be two unsigned integers preceding the data. The first will represent the number of rows in the matrix and the second will represent the number of columns.

The data area always begins on an even 8-byte boundary. Numbers are stored in double precision (8 bytes per element, 16 if complex). For complex matrices, all of the real parts are stored first, followed by all the imaginary parts.

17.5.11 Data Set v96

Offset	Description
0-3	always 0xFFFFFFFF
4-7	always 0
8-11	always 0xFFFFFFFF
12-15	always 0
16-19	always 0xFFFFFFFF
20-23	0xFFFFFFFF for forward byte order, 0 for backward byte order
24-27	0xFFFFFFFF for forward bit order, 0 for backward bit order
28-31	0xABCDEF02
32-35	version, currently 1
36-39	reserved
40-43	floating point type, 1 for IEEE 754
44-47	12 - signed 2-byte integer
	1004 - single precision floating point
	1008 - double precision float
48-51	2, 4, or 8, the size of an element in bytes
52-55	0 - real matrix, 1 - complex matrix
56-59	1 - imaginary part of matrix follows real part (standard GAUSS style)
	2 - imaginary part of each element immediately follows real part (FORTRAN style)
60-63	always 2
64-67	1 for row major ordering of elements, 2 for column major

Offset	Description
68-71	always 0
72-75	header size, 128 + columns * 33, padded to 8-byte boundary
76-79	reserved
80-83	rows in data set
84-87	columns in data set
88-127	reserved

The variable names begin at offset 128 and are stored 32 bytes each in ASCII format. Each name corresponds to one column of data. Names less than 32 characters are padded on the right with bytes of zero.

The variable type flags immediately follow the variable names. They are 1-byte binary integers, one per column, padded to an even 8-byte boundary. A 1 indicates a numeric variable and a 0 indicates a character variable.

Contents of the data set follow the header and start on an 8-byte boundary. Data is either 2-byte signed integer, 4-byte single precision floating point or 8-byte double precision floating point.

17.5.12 GAUSS Data Archive

A **GAUSS** Data Archive consists of a header, followed by the variable data and, finally, an array of variable descriptors containing information about each variable.

Header

The header for a **GAUSS** Data Archive is laid out as follows:

Offset	Type	Description
0-3	32-bit unsigned integer	always 0xFFFFFFFF
4-7	32-bit unsigned integer	always 0
8-11	32-bit unsigned integer	always 0xFFFFFFFF

Offset	Type	Description
12-15	32-bit unsigned integer	always 0
16-19	32-bit unsigned integer	always 0xFFFFFFFF
20-23	32-bit unsigned integer	0xFFFFFFFF for forward byte order, 0 for backward byte order
24-27	32-bit unsigned integer	always 0
28-31	32-bit unsigned integer	always 0xABCDEF08
32-35	32-bit unsigned integer	version, currently 1
36-39	32-bit unsigned integer	reserved
40-43	32-bit unsigned integer	floating point type, 1 for IEEE 754
44-55	32-bit unsigned integers	reserved
56-63	64-bit unsigned integer	number of variables
64-67	32-bit unsigned integer	header size, 128
68-95	32-bit unsigned integers	reserved
96-103	64-bit unsigned integer	offset of variable descriptor table from end of header
104-127	64-bit unsigned integers	reserved

Variable Data

After the header comes the variable data. Matrices are laid out in row-major order, and strings are written with a null-terminating byte.

For string arrays, an array of *rows*×*columns* struct **satable**’s is written out first, followed by the string array data in row-major order with each element null terminated. A struct **satable** consists of two members:

Member	Type	Description
off	size_t	offset of element data from beginning of string array data
len	size_t	length of element data, including null-terminating byte

On a 32-bit machine, a **size_t** is 4 bytes. On a 64-bit machine, it is 8 bytes.

Arrays are written with the orders (sizes) of each dimension followed by the array data. For example, the following 2×3×4 array:

[1,1,1] through [1,3,4] =

1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12

[2,1,1] through [2,3,4] =

13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24

would be written out like this:

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24

Variable Structures

The variable data is followed by an array of variable descriptors. For each variable in the GDA, there is a corresponding variable descriptor in this array. A variable descriptor is laid out as follows:

Offset	Type	Description
0-3	32-bit unsigned integer	variable type
4-7	32-bit unsigned integer	data type, 10 for 8 byte floating point
8-11	32-bit unsigned integer	dimensions, used only for arrays
12-15	32-bit unsigned integer	complex flag, 1 for real data, 0 for complex
16-19	32-bit unsigned integer	size of pointer, indicates whether the variable was written on a 32-bit or 64-bit platform

Offset	Type	Description
20-23	32-bit unsigned integer	huge flag, indicates whether the variable is larger than INT_MAX
24-31	64-bit unsigned integer	rows for matrices and string arrays
32-39	64-bit unsigned integer	columns for matrices and string arrays, length for strings, including null-terminating byte
40-47	64-bit unsigned integer	index of the variable in the GDA
48-55	64-bit unsigned integer	offset of variable data from end of header
56-63	64-bit unsigned integer	length of variable data in bytes
64-143	string	name of variable, null-terminated

The variable type (bytes 0-3) may be any of the following:

- 20** array
- 30** matrix
- 40** string
- 50** string array

The size of pointer element (bytes 16-19) is the size of a pointer on the machine on which the variable was written to the GDA. It will be set to 4 on 32-bit machines and 8 on 64-bit machines. This element is used only for string array variables. If a GDA containing string arrays is created on a 32-bit machine and then read on a 64-bit machine, or vice versa, then the size of pointer element indicates how the members of the struct **satable**'s must be converted in order to be read on the current machine.

The huge flag (bytes 20-23) is set to 1 if the variable size is greater than INT_MAX, which is defined as 2147483647. A variable for which the huge flag is set to 1 may not be read into **GAUSS** on a 32-bit machine.

The variable index element (bytes 40-47) contains the index of the variable in the GDA. Although the variable data is not necessarily ordered by index (see **gdaUpdate**), the variable descriptors are. Therefore, the indices are always in ascending order.

Foreign Language Interface 18

The Foreign Language Interface (FLI) allows users to create functions written in C, FORTRAN, or other languages, and call them from a **GAUSS** program. The functions are placed in dynamic libraries (DLLs, also known as shared libraries or shared objects) and linked in at run-time as needed. The FLI functions are:

dlibrary Link and unlink dynamic libraries at run-time.

dllcall Call functions located in dynamic libraries.

GAUSS recognizes a default dynamic library directory, a directory where it will look for your dynamic-link libraries when you call **dlibrary**. You can specify the default directory in `gauss.cfg` by setting **dlib_path**. As it is shipped, `gauss.cfg` specifies `$(GAUSSDIR)/dlib` as the default directory.

18.1 Writing FLI Functions

Your FLI functions should be written to the following specifications:

1. Take 0 or more pointers to doubles as arguments.

This does not mean you cannot pass strings to an FLI function. Just recast the double pointer to a char pointer inside the function.

2. Take those arguments either in a list or a vector.
3. Return an integer.

In C syntax, then, your functions would take one of the following forms:

1. `int func(void);`
2. `int func(double *arg1 [],double *arg2,...);`
3. `int func(double *arg[]);`

Functions can be written to take a list of up to 100 arguments, or a vector (in C terms, a 1-dimensional array) of up to 1000 arguments. This does not affect how the function is called from **GAUSS**; the **dllcall** statement will always appear to pass the arguments in a list. That is, the **dllcall** statement will always look as follows:

```
dllcall func(a,b,c,d[,e...]);
```

For details on calling your function, passing arguments to it, getting data back, and what the return value means, see **dllcall** in the **GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE**.

18.2 Creating Dynamic Libraries

The following describes how to build a dynamic library called `hyp.dll` (on Windows) or `libhyp.so` (on UNIX/Linux) from the source file `hyp.c`.

As mentioned in the previous section, your FLI functions may take only pointers to doubles as arguments. Therefore, you should define your FLI functions to be merely wrapper functions that cast their arguments as necessary and then call the functions that actually do the work. This is demonstrated in the source file `hyp.c`:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <math.h>

/* This code is not meant to be efficient. It is meant
** to demonstrate the use of the FLI.
*/

/* this does all the work, not exported */
static int hypo(double *x, double *y, double *h, int r, int c)
{
    double *wx;
    double *wy;
    double *dp;
    double *sp1;
    double *sp2;
    int i, elems;

    elems = r*c;

    /* malloc work arrays */
    if ((wx = (double *)malloc(elems*sizeof(double))) == NULL)
        return 30;    /* out of memory */

    if ((wy = (double *)malloc(elems*sizeof(double))) == NULL)
    {
```

```
        free(wx);
        return 30;      /* out of memory */
    }

    dp = wx;
    sp1 = x;

    /* square x into work area wx */
    for (i=0; i<elems; i++)
    {
        *dp = *sp1 * *sp1;
        ++sp1;
        ++dp;
    }

    dp = wy;
    sp2 = y;

    /* square y into work area wy */
    for (i=0; i<elems; i++)
    {
        *dp = *sp2 * *sp2;
        ++sp2;
        ++dp;
    }

    dp = h;
    sp1 = wx;
    sp2 = wy;

    /* compute hypotenuse into h which was allocated by GAUSS */
    for (i=0; i<elems; i++)
    {
        *dp = sqrt(*sp1 + *sp2);
        ++sp1;
        ++sp2;
        ++dp;
    }
```

```
    }

    /* free whatever you malloc */
    free(wx);
    free(wy);

    return 0;
}

/* exported wrapper, all double * arguments, calls the real
** function with whatever data types it expects
*/
int hypotenuse(double *x, double *y, double *h,
               double *r, double *c)
{
    return hypo( x, y, h, (int)*r, (int)*c );
}
```

The following Makefiles contain the compile and link commands you would use to build the dynamic library on various platforms. For explanations of the various flags used, see the documentation for your compiler and linker.

Windows

```
hyp.dll: hyp.obj
link /dll /out:hyp.dll hyp.obj

hyp.obj: hyp.c
cl -c -MD -GX hyp.c
```

Solaris

\$(CCOPTS) indicates any optional compilation flags you might add.

```
CCOPTIONS = -g -xsb -xarch=v9 -KPIC  
CC = cc
```

```
libhyp.so: hyp.c  
$(CC) -G $(CCOPTIONS) -o $@ hyp.c -lm
```

Linux

\$(CCOPTS) indicates any optional compilation flags you might add.

```
CCOPTIONS = -g -O2 -lm -lc -shared  
CC = gcc
```

```
libhyp.so: hyp.cpp  
$(CC) $(CCOPTIONS) -o $@ hyp.c
```

For details on linking your dynamic library, see **dlibrary** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.

Data Transformations 19

GAUSS allows expressions that directly reference variables (columns) of a data set. This is done within the context of a data loop:

```
dataloop infile outfile;  
    drop wagefac wqlec shordelt foobly;  
    csed = ln(sqrt(csed));  
    select csed > 0.35 and married $=\,= "y";  
    make chfac = hcfac + wcfac;  
    keep csed chfac stid recsum voom;  
enddata;
```

GAUSS translates the data loop into a procedure that performs the required operations, and then calls the procedure automatically at the location (in your program) of the data loop. It does this by translating your main program file into a temporary file and then executing the temporary file.

A data loop may be placed only in the main program file. Data loops in files that are **#include'd** or autoloaded are not recognized.

19.1 Data Loop Statements

A data loop begins with a **dataloop** statement and ends with an **enddata** statement. Inside a data loop, the following statements are supported:

code	Create variable based on a set of logical expressions.
delete	Delete rows (observations) based on a logical expression.
drop	Specify variables NOT to be written to data set.
extern	Allow access to matrices and strings in memory.
keep	Specify variables to be written to output data set.
lag	Lag variables a number of periods.
listwise	Control deletion of missing values.
make	Create new variable.
outtyp	Specify output file precision.
recode	Change variable based on a set of logical expressions.
select	Select rows (observations) based on a logical expression.
vector	Create new variable from a scalar returning expression.

In any expression inside a data loop, all text symbols not immediately followed by a left parenthesis ‘(’ are assumed to be data set variable (column) names. Text symbols followed by a left parenthesis are assumed to be procedure names. Any symbol listed in an **extern** statement is assumed to be a matrix or string already in memory.

19.2 Using Other Statements

All program statements in the main file and not inside a data loop are passed through to the temporary file without modification. Program statements within a data loop that are preceded by a ‘#’ are passed through to the temporary file without modification. The user familiar with the code generated in the temporary file can use this to do out-of-the-ordinary operations inside the data loop.

19.3 Debugging Data Loops

The translator that processes data loops can be turned on and off. When the translator is on, there are three distinct phases in running a program:

Translation	Translation of main program file to temporary file.
Compilation	Compilation of temporary file.
Execution	Execution of compiled code.

19.3.1 Translation Phase

In the translation phase, the main program file is translated into a temporary file. Each data loop is translated into a procedure and a call to this procedure is placed in the temporary file at the same location as the original data loop. The data loop itself is commented out in the temporary file. All the data loop procedures are placed at the end of the temporary file.

Depending upon the status of line number tracking, error messages encountered in this phase will be printed with the file name and line numbers corresponding to the main file.

19.3.2 Compilation Phase

In the compilation phase, the temporary file is compiled. Depending upon the status of line number tracking, error messages encountered in this phase will be printed with the file name and

line numbers corresponding to both the main file and the temporary file.

19.3.3 Execution Phase

In the execution phase, the compiled program is executed. Depending on the status of line number tracking, error messages will include line number references from both the main file and the temporary file.

19.4 Reserved Variables

The following local variables are created by the translator and used in the produced code:

<code>x_cv</code>	<code>x_iptr</code>	<code>x_ncol</code>	<code>x_plag</code>
<code>x_drop</code>	<code>x_keep</code>	<code>x_nlag</code>	<code>x_ptrim</code>
<code>x_fpin</code>	<code>x_lval</code>	<code>x_nrow</code>	<code>x_shft</code>
<code>x_fpout</code>	<code>x_lvar</code>	<code>x_ntrim</code>	<code>x_tname</code>
<code>x_i</code>	<code>x_n</code>	<code>x_out</code>	<code>x_vname</code>
<code>x_in</code>	<code>x_name</code>	<code>x_outtyp</code>	<code>x_x</code>

These variables are reserved, and should not be used within a **dataloop... endata** section.

The GAUSS Profiler 20

GAUSS now includes a profiler, which enables you to determine exactly how much time your programs are spending on each line and in each called procedure, thereby providing you with the information you need to increase the efficiency of your programs. The **GAUSS** Profiler and `tcollect` are both run from a command prompt window, not at a **GAUSS** prompt.

20.1 Using the GAUSS Profiler

There are two steps to using the **GAUSS** Profiler: collection and analysis.

20.1.1 Collection

To collect profiling information, you must run your **GAUSS** program in `tcollect`, an executable shipped with **GAUSS** that is identical to `tgauss` except that it generates a file containing profiling information each time it is run:

```
tcollect -b myfile.e
```

The output displayed by `tcollect` includes the name of the output file containing the profiling information. `tcollect` output files have a `gaussprof` prefix and a `.gco` extension.

Note that running `tcollect` on long programs may generate a very large `.gco` output file. Thus you may want to delete the `.gco` files on your machine regularly.

20.1.2 Analysis

To analyze the information stored in the `tcollect` output file, you must run the `gaussprof` executable, which is also shipped with **GAUSS**, on that file. `gaussprof` produces an organized report, displaying the time usage by procedure and by line.

Assuming that running `myfile.e` in `tcollect` produced an output file called `gaussprof_001.gco`, you could analyze the results in that file as follows:

```
gaussprof gaussprof_001.gco
```

The syntax for `gaussprof` is:

```
gaussprof [flags] profile_data_file ...
```

where *flags* may be any of the following:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| -p | profile procedure calls |
| -l | profile line numbers |
| -h | suppress headers |
| -sp <i>order</i> | procedure call sort order where <i>order</i> contains one or more of the following: |

e	exclusive time
t	total time
c	number of times called
p	procedure name
a	ascending order
d	descending order (default)

Columns are sorted all ascending or all descending.

-sl *order* line number sort order where order contains one or more of the following:

t	time spent on line
c	number of times line was executed
f	file name
l	line number
a	ascending order
d	descending order (default)

Columns are sorted all ascending or all descending.

The default, with no flags, is: **-pl -sp dep -sl dtf**.

Publication Quality Graphics 21

GAUSS Publication Quality Graphics (PQG) is a set of routines built on the graphics functions in **GraphiC** by Scientific Endeavors Corporation.

The main graphics routines include xy, xyz, surface, polar and log plots, as well as histograms, bar, and box graphs. Users can enhance their graphs by adding legends, changing fonts, and adding extra lines, arrows, symbols and messages.

The user can create a single full size graph, inset a smaller graph into a larger one, tile a window with several equally sized graphs or place several overlapping graphs in the window. Graphic panel size and location are all completely under the user's control.

21.1 General Design

GAUSS PQG consists of a set of main graphing procedures and several additional procedures and global variables for customizing the output.

All of the actual output to the window happens during the call to these main routines:

bar	Bar graphs.
box	Box plots.
contour	Contour plots.
draw	Draw graphs using only global variables.
hist	Histogram.
histp	Percentage histogram.
histf	Histogram from a vector of frequencies.
loglog	Log scaling on both axes.
logx	Log scaling on X axis.
logy	Log scaling on Y axis.
polar	Polar plots.
surface	3-D surface with hidden line removal.
xy	Cartesian graph.
xyz	3-D Cartesian graph.

21.2 Using Publication Quality Graphics

21.2.1 Getting Started

There are four basic parts to a graphics program. These elements should be in any program that uses graphics routines. The four parts are the header, data setup, graphics format setup, and graphics call.

Header

In order to use the graphics procedures, the **pgraph** library must be activated. This is done in the **library** statement at the top of your program or command file. The next line in your program will typically be a command to reset the graphics global variables to their default state. For example:

```
library mylib, pgraph;  
graphset;
```

Data Setup

The data to be graphed must be in matrices. For example:

```
x = seqa(1,1,50);  
y = sin(x);
```

Graphics Format Setup

Most of the graphics elements contain defaults that allow the user to generate a plot without modification. These defaults, however, may be overridden by the user through the use of global variables and graphics procedures. Some of the elements that may be configured by the user are axes numbering, labeling, cropping, scaling, line and symbol sizes and types, legends, and colors.

Calling Graphics Routines

The graphics routines take as input the user data and global variables that have previously been set. It is in these routines where the graphics file is created and displayed.

Following are three PQG examples. The first two programs are different versions of the same graph. The variables that begin with **_p** are the global control variables used by the graphics

routines. (For a detailed description of these variables, see GLOBAL CONTROL VARIABLES, Section 21.6.

Example 1 The routine being called here is a simple XY plot. The entire window will be used. Four sets of data will be plotted with the line and symbol attributes automatically selected. This graph will include a legend, title, and a time/date stamp (time stamp is on by default):

```
library pgraph;          /* activate PGRAPH library */
graphset;                /* reset global variables */
x = seqa(.1,.1,100);     /* generate data */
y = sin(x);
y = y ~ y*.8 ~ y*.6 ~ y*.4; /* 4 curves plotted against x */
_plegctl = 1;            /* legend on */
title("Example xy Graph"); /* Main title */
xy(x,y);                 /* Call to main routine */
```

Example 2 Here is the same graph with more of the graphics format controlled by the user. The first two data sets will be plotted using symbols at data points only (observed data); the data points in the second two sets will be connected with lines (predicted results):

```
library pgraph;          /* activate PGRAPH library */
graphset;                /* reset global variables */
x = seqa(.1,.1,100);     /* generate data */
y = sin(x);
y = y ~ y*.8 ~ y*.6 ~ y*.4; /* 4 curves plotted against x */
_pdate = "";            /* date is not printed */
_plctrl = { 1, 1, 0, 0 }; /* 2 curves w/symbols, 2 without */
_pltype = { 1, 2, 6, 6 }; /* dashed, dotted, solid lines */
_pstype = { 1, 2, 0, 0 }; /* symbol types circles, squares */
_plegctl= { 2, 3, 1.7, 4.5 }; /* legend size and locations */
_plegstr= "Sin wave 1.\0"\ /* 4 lines legend text */
          "Sin wave .8\0"\
          "Sin wave .6\0"\
          "Sin wave .4";
ylabel("Amplitude");     /* Y axis label */
```

```
xlabel("X Axis");           /* X axis label */
title("Example xy Graph");   /* main title */
xy(x,y);                     /* call to main routine */
```

Example 3 In this example, two graphics panels are drawn. The first is a full-sized surface representation, and the second is a half-sized inset containing a contour of the same data located in the lower left corner of the window:

```
library pgraph;              /* activate pgraph library */

/* Generate data for surface and contour plots */
x = seqa(-10,0.1,71)';      /* note x is a row vector */
y = seqa(-10,0.1,71);        /* note y is a column vector */
z = cos(5*sin(x) - y);        /* z is a 71x71 matrix */

begwind;                      /* initialize graphics windows */
makewind(9,6.855,0,0,0);      /* first window full size */
makewind(9/2,6.855/2,1,1,0); /* second window inset to first */

setwind(1);                    /* activate first window */
graphset;                      /* reset global variables */
_pzclr = { 1, 2, 3, 4 };      /* set Z level colors */
title("cos(5*sin(x) - y)");    /* set main title */
xlabel("X Axis");              /* set X axis label */
ylabel("Y Axis");              /* set Y axis label */
scale3d(miss(0,0),miss(0,0),-5|5); /* scale Z axis */
surface(x,y,z);                /* call surface routine */

nextwind;                       /* activate second window */
graphset;                       /* reset global variables */
_pzclr = { 1, 2, 3, 4 };      /* set Z level colors */
_pbox = 15;                     /* white border */
contour(x,y,z);                 /* call contour routine */

endwind;                         /* Display windows */
```

While the structure has changed somewhat, the four basic elements of the graphics program are all here. The additional routines **begwind**, **endwind**, **makewind**, **nextwind**, and **setwind** are all used to control the graphic panels.

As Example 3 illustrates, the code between graphic panel functions (that is, **setwind** or **nextwind**) may include assignments to global variables, a call to **graphset**, or may set up new data to be passed to the main graphics routines.

You are encouraged to run the example programs supplied with **GAUSS**. Analyzing these programs is perhaps the best way to learn how to use the PQG system. The example programs are located on the `examples` subdirectory.

21.2.2 Graphics Coordinate System

PQG uses a 4190×3120 pixel resolution grid on a 9.0×6.855-inch printable area. There are three units of measure supported with most of the graphics global elements:

Inch Coordinates

Inch coordinates are based on the dimensions of the full-size 9.0×6.855-inch output page. The origin is (0,0) at the lower left corner of the page. If the picture is rotated, the origin is at the upper left. (For more information, see `INCH UNITS IN GRAPHIC PANELS`, Section [21.3.5](#).)

Plot Coordinates

Plot coordinates refer to the coordinate system of the graph in the units of the user's X, Y and Z axes.

Pixel Coordinates

Pixel coordinates refer to the 4096×3120 pixel coordinates of the full-size output page. The origin is (0,0) at the lower left corner of the page. If the picture is rotated, the origin is at the upper left.

21.3 Graphic Panels

Multiple graphic panels for graphics are supported. These graphic panels allow the user to display multiple graphs on one window or page.

A graphic panel is any rectangular subsection of the window or page. Graphic panels may be any size and position on the window and may be tiled or overlapping, transparent or nontransparent.

21.3.1 Tiled Graphic Panels

Tiled graphic panels do not overlap. The window can easily be divided into any number of tiled graphic panels with the **window** command. **window** takes three parameters: number of rows, number of columns, and graphic panel attribute (1=transparent, 0=nontransparent).

This example will divide the window into six equally sized graphic panels. There will be two rows of three graphic panels—three graphic panels in the upper half of the window and three in the lower half. The attribute value of 0 is arbitrary since there are no other graphic panels beneath them.

```
window(nrows,ncols,attr);  
window(2,3,0);
```

21.3.2 Overlapping Graphic Panels

Overlapping graphic panels are laid on top of one another as they are created, much as if you were using the cut and paste method to place several graphs together on one page. An overlapping graphic panel is created with the **makewind** command.

In this example, **makewind** will create an overlapping graphic panel that is 4 inches wide by 2.5 inches tall, positioned 1 inch from the left edge of the page and 1.5 inches from the bottom of the page. It will be nontransparent:

```
makewind(hsize,vsize,hpos,vpos,attr);
```

```
window(2,3,0);  
makewind(4,2.5,1,1.5,0);
```

21.3.3 Nontransparent Graphic Panels

A nontransparent graphic panel is one that is blanked before graphics information is written to it. Therefore, information in any previously drawn graphic panels that lie under it will not be visible.

21.3.4 Transparent Graphic Panels

A transparent graphic panel is one that is not blanked, allowing the graphic panel beneath it to “show through”. Lines, symbols, arrows, error bars, and other graphics objects may extend from one graphic panel to the next by using transparent graphic panels. First, create the desired graphic panel configuration. Then create a full-window, transparent graphic panel using the **makewind** or **window** command. Set the appropriate global variables to position the desired object on the transparent graphic panel. Use the **draw** procedure to draw it. This graphic panel will act as a transparent “overlay” on top of the other graphic panels. Transparent graphic panels can be used to add text or to superimpose one graphic panel on top of another.

21.3.5 Using Graphic Panel Functions

The following is a summary of the graphic panel functions:

begwind	Graphic panel initialization procedure.
endwind	End graphic panel manipulations, display graphs.
window	Partition window into tiled graphic panels.
makewind	Create graphic panel with specified size and position.
setwind	Set to specified graphic panel number.

nextwind	Set to next available graphic panel number.
getwind	Get current graphic panel number.
savewind	Save graphic panel configuration to a file.
loadwind	Load graphic panel configuration from a file.

This example creates four tiled graphic panels and one graphic panel that overlaps the other four:

```
library pgraph;
graphset;
begwind;

window(2,2,0); /* Create four tiled graphic panels
               (2 rows, 2 columns) */

xsize = 9/2;    /* Create graphic panel that overlaps the
               tiled graphic panels */
ysize = 6.855/2;
makewind(xsize,ysize,xsize/2,ysize/2,0);

x = seqa(1,1,1000); /* Create X data */
y = (sin(x) + 1) * 10.; /* Create Y data */

setwind(1);      /* Graph #1, upper left corner */
xy(x,y);
nextwind;        /* Graph #2, upper right corner */
logx(x,y);
nextwind;        /* Graph #3, lower left corner */
logy(x,y);
nextwind;        /* Graph #4, lower right corner */
loglog(x,y);
nextwind;        /* Graph #5, center, overlaid */
bar(x,y);
endwind;         /* End graphic panel processing,
               display graph */
```

21.3.6 Inch Units in Graphic Panels

Some global variables allow coordinates to be input in inches. If a coordinate value is in inches and is being used in a graphic panel, that value will be scaled to “graphic panel inches” and positioned relative to the lower left corner of the graphic panel. A “graphic panel inch” is a true inch in size only if the graphic panel is scaled to the full window, otherwise X coordinates will be scaled relative to the horizontal graphic panel size and Y coordinates will be scaled relative to the vertical graphic panel size.

21.3.7 Saving Graphic Panel Configurations

The functions **savewind** and **loadwind** allow the user to save graphic panel configurations. Once graphic panels are created (using **makewind** and **window**), **savewind** may be called. This will save to disk the global variables containing information about the current graphic panel configuration. To load this configuration again, call **loadwind**. (See **loadwind** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.

21.4 Graphics Text Elements

Graphics text elements, such as titles, messages, axes labels, axes numbering, and legends, can be modified and enhanced by changing fonts and by adding superscripting, subscripting, and special mathematical symbols.

To make these modifications and enhancements, the user can embed “escape codes” in the text strings that are passed to **title**, **xlabel**, **ylabel** and **asclabel** or assigned to **_pmsgstr** and **_plegstr**.

The escape codes used for graphics text are:

<code>\000</code>	String termination character (null byte).
<code>[</code>	Enter superscript mode, leave subscript mode.
<code>]</code>	Enter subscript mode, leave superscript mode.
<code>@</code>	Interpret next character as literal.
<code>\20n</code>	Select font number <i>n</i> . (see SELECTING FONTS, following).

The escape code `\L` (or `\l`) can be embedded into title strings to create a multiple line title:

```
title("This is the first line\lthis is the second line");
```

A null byte `\000` is used to separate strings in `_plegstr` and `_pmsgstr`:

```
_pmsgstr = "First string\000Second string\000Third string";
```

or

```
_plegstr = "Curve 1\000Curve 2";
```

Use `[. .]` to create the expression $M(t) = E(e^{tx})$:

```
_pmsgstr = "M(t) = E(e[tx])";
```

Use `@` to generate `[` and `]` in an X axis label:

```
xlabel("Data used for x is: data@[. ,1 2 3@]");
```

21.4.1 Selecting Fonts

Four fonts are supplied with the **Publication Quality Graphics** system. They are Simplex, Complex, Simgrma, and Microb. (For a list of the characters available in each font, see Appendix [A](#).)

Fonts are loaded by passing to the **fonts** procedure a string containing the names of all fonts to be loaded. For example, this statement will load all four fonts:

```
fonts("simplex complex microb simgrma");
```

The **fonts** command must be called before any of the fonts can be used in text strings. A font can then be selected by embedding an escape code of the form “\20*n*” in the string that is to be written in the new font. The *n* will be 1, 2, 3 or 4, depending on the order in which the fonts were loaded in **fonts**. If the fonts were loaded as in the previous example, the escape characters for each would be:

```
\201 Simplex  
\202 Complex  
\203 Microb  
\204 Simgrma
```

The following example demonstrates how to select a font for use in a string:

```
title("\201This is the title using Simplex font");  
xlabel("\202This is the label for X using Complex font");  
ylabel("\203This is the label for Y using Microb font");
```

Once a font is selected, all succeeding text will use that font until another font is selected. If no fonts are selected by the user, a default font (Simplex) is loaded and selected automatically for all text work.

21.4.2 Greek and Mathematical Symbols

The following examples illustrate the use of the Simgrma font; they assume that Simgrma was the fourth font loaded. (For the available Simgrma characters and their numbers, see [Appendix A](#).) The Simgrma characters are specified by either:

1. The character number, preceeded by a “\”.
2. The regular text character with the same number.

For example, to get an integral sign “ \int ” in Simgrma, embed either a “`\044`” or a “`,`” in a string that has been set to use the Simgrma font.

To produce the title $f(x) = \sin^2(\pi x)$, the following title string should be used:

```
title("\201f(x) = sin[2](\204p\201x)");
```

The “**p**” (character 112) corresponds to “ π ” in Simgrma.

To number the major X axis tick marks with multiples of $\pi/4$, the following could be passed to **asclabel**:

```
lab = "\2010 \204p\201/4 \204p\201/2 3\204p\201/4 \204p";
asclabel(lab,0);
xtics(0,pi,pi/4,1);
```

xtics is used to make sure that major tick marks are placed in the appropriate places.

This example will number the X axis tick marks with the labels μ^{-2} , μ^{-1} , 1, μ , and μ^2 :

```
lab = "\204m\201[-2] \204m\201[-1] 1 \204m m\201[2]";
asclabel(lab,0);
```

This example illustrates the use of several of the special Simgrma symbols:

```
_pmsgstr = "\2041\2011/2\204p ,\201e[-\204m[\2012]\201/2]d\204m";
```

This produces:

$$\sqrt{1/2\pi} \int e^{-\mu^2/2} d\mu$$

21.5 Colors

0	Black	8	Dark Grey
1	Blue	9	Light Blue
2	Green	10	Light Green
3	Cyan	11	Light Cyan
4	Red	12	Light Red
5	Magenta	13	Light Magenta
6	Brown	14	Yellow
7	Grey	15	White

21.6 Global Control Variables

The following global variables are used to control various graphics elements. Default values are provided. Any or all of these variables can be set before calling one of the main graphing routines. The default values can be modified by changing the declarations in `pgraph.dec` and the statements in the procedure **graphset** in `pgraph.src`. **graphset** can be called whenever the user wants to reset these variables to their default values.

_pageshf 2×1 vector, the graph will be shifted to the right and up if this is not 0. If this is 0, the graph will be centered on the output page. Default is 0.

Note: Used internally. (For the same functionality, see **makewind** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.) This is used by the graphic panel routines. The user must not set this when using the graphic panel procedures.

_pagesiz 2×1 vector, size of the graph in inches on the printer output. Maximum size is 9.0×6.855 inches (unrotated) or 6.855×9.0 inches (rotated). If this is 0, the maximum size will be used. Default is 0.

Note: Used internally. (For the same functionality, see **makewind** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE). This is used by the graphic panel routines. The user must not set this when using the graphic panel procedures.

_parrow M×11 matrix, draws one arrow per row of the input matrix (for total of M arrows). If scalar zero, no arrows will be drawn.

[M,1] x starting point.

[M,2] y starting point.

[M,3] x ending point.

[M,4] y ending point.

[M,5] ratio of the length of the arrow head to half its width.

[M,6] size of arrow head in inches.

[M,7] type and location of arrow heads. This integer number will be interpreted as a decimal expansion mn , for example: if 10, then $m = 1$, $n = 0$.

m , type of arrow head:

- 0 solid
- 1 empty
- 2 open
- 3 closed

n , location of arrow head:

- 0 none
- 1 at the final end
- 2 at both ends

[M,8] color of arrow, see COLORS, Section 21.5.

[M,9] coordinate units for location:

- 1 x,y starting and ending locations in plot coordinates
- 2 x,y starting and ending locations in inches
- 3 x,y starting and ending locations in pixels

[M,10] line type:

- 1 dashed
- 2 dotted
- 3 short dashes
- 4 closely spaced dots
- 5 dots and dashes
- 6 solid

[M,11] controls thickness of lines used to draw arrow. This value may be zero or greater. A value of zero is normal line width.

To create two single-headed arrows, located using inches, use

```
_parrow = { 1 1 2 2 3 0.2 11 10 2 6 0,
            3 4 2 2 3 0.2 11 10 2 6 0 };
```

_parrow3 M×12 matrix, draws one 3-D arrow per row of the input matrix (for a total of M arrows). If scalar zero, no arrows will be drawn.

[M,1] x starting point in 3-D plot coordinates.

[M,2] y starting point in 3-D plot coordinates.

[M,3] z starting point in 3-D plot coordinates.

[M,4] x ending point in 3-D plot coordinates.

[M,5] y ending point in 3-D plot coordinates.

[M,6] z ending point in 3-D plot coordinates.

[M,7] ratio of the length of the arrow head to half its width.

[M,8] size of arrow head in inches.

[M,9] type and location of arrow heads. This integer number will be interpreted as a decimal expansion mn . For example: if 10, then $m = 1$, $n = 0$.

m , type of arrow head:

- 0** solid
- 1** empty
- 2** open
- 3** closed

n , location of arrow head:

- 0** none
- 1** at the final end
- 2** at both ends

[M,10] color of arrow, see COLORS, Section [21.5](#).

[M,11] line type:

- 1** dashed
- 2** dotted
- 3** short dashes
- 4** closely spaced dots
- 5** dots and dashes
- 6** solid

[M,12] controls thickness of lines used to draw arrow. This value may be zero or greater. A value of zero is normal line width.

To create two single-headed arrows, located using plot coordinates, use

```
_parrow3 = { 1 1 1 2 2 2 3 0.2 11 10 6 0,
              3 4 5 2 2 2 3 0.2 11 10 6 0 };
```

_paxes

scalar, 2×1, or 3×1 vector for independent control for each axis. The first element controls the X axis, the second controls the Y axis, and the third (if set) controls the Z axis. If 0 the axis will not be drawn. Default is 1.

If this is a scalar, it will be expanded to that value.

For example:

```
_paxes = { 1, 0 }; /* turn X axis on, Y axis off */
_paxes = 0;        /* turn all axes off */
_paxes = 1;        /* turn all axes on */
```

_paxht

scalar, size of axes labels in inches. If 0, a default size will be computed. Default is 0.

_pbartyp

1×2 or K×2 matrix. Controls bar shading and colors in bar graphs and histograms.

The first column controls the bar shading:

- 0** no shading
- 1** dots

- 2 vertical cross-hatch
- 3 diagonal lines with positive slope
- 4 diagonal lines with negative slope
- 5 diagonal cross-hatch
- 6 solid

The second column controls the bar color, see **COLORS**, Section 21.5.

- _pbarwid** scalar, width of bars in bar graphs and histograms. The valid range is 0-1. If 0, the bars will be a single pixel wide. If 1, the bars will touch each other. Default is 0.5, so the bars take up about half the space open to them.
- _pbox** scalar, draws a box (border) around the entire graph. Set to desired color of box to be drawn. Use 0 if no box is desired. Default is 0.
- _pboxctl** 5×1 vector, controls box plot style, width, and color. Used by procedure **box** only.
- [1] box width between 0 and 1. If 0, the box plot is drawn as two vertical lines representing the quartile ranges with a filled circle representing the 50th percentile.
 - [2] box color, see **COLORS**, Section 21.5. If 0, the colors may be individually controlled using global variable **_pcolor**.
 - [3] min/max style for the box symbol. One of the following:
 - 1 minimum and maximum taken from the actual limits of the data. Elements 4 and 5 are ignored.
 - 2 statistical standard with the minimum and maximum calculated according to interquartile range as follows:
$$\begin{aligned} \text{intqrang} &= 75^{\text{th}} - 25^{\text{th}} \\ \text{min} &= 25^{\text{th}} - 1.5 \text{ intqrang} \\ \text{max} &= 75^{\text{th}} + 1.5 \text{ intqrang} \end{aligned}$$
Elements 4 and 5 are ignored.
 - 3 minimum and maximum percentiles taken from elements 4 and 5.
 - [4] minimum percentile value (0-100) if **_pboxctl**[3] = 3.
 - [5] maximum percentile value (0-100) if **_pboxctl**[3] = 3.

_pboxlim 5×M output matrix containing computed percentile results from procedure **box**. M corresponds to each column of input y data.

[1,M] minimum whisker limit according to **_pboxctl**[3].

[2,M] 25th percentile (bottom of box).

[3,M] 50th percentile (median).

[4,M] 75th percentile (top of box).

[5,M] maximum whisker limit according to **_pboxctl**[3].

_pcolor scalar or K×1 vector, colors for main curves in **xy**, **xyz** and **log** graphs. To use a single color set for all curves set this to a scalar color value. If 0, use default colors. Default is 0.

The default colors come from a global vector called **_pcsel**. This vector can be changed by editing **pgraph.dec** to change the default colors, see **COLORS**, Section 21.5 (**_pcsel** is not documented elsewhere).

_pcrop scalar or 1×5 vector, allows plot cropping for different graphic elements to be individually controlled. Valid values are 0 (disabled) or 1 (enabled). If cropping is enabled, any graphical data sent outside the axes area will not be drawn. If this is a scalar, it is expanded to a 1×5 vector using the given value for all elements. All cropping is enabled by default.

[1] crop main curves/symbols.

[2] crop lines generated using **_pline**.

[3] crop arrows generated using **_parrow**.

[4] crop circles/arcs generated using **_pline**.

[5] crop symbols generated using **_psym**.

This example will crop main curves, and lines and circles drawn by **_pline**.

```
_pcrop = { 1 1 0 1 0 };
```

_pcross scalar. If 1, the axes will intersect at the (0,0) X-Y location if it is visible. Default is 0, meaning the axes will be at the lowest end of the X-Y coordinates.

_pdate date string. If this contains characters, the date will be appended and printed. The default is set as follows (the first character is a font selection escape code):

```
_pdate = "\201GAUSS  ";
```

If this is set to a null string, no date will be printed. (For more information on using fonts within strings, see [GRAPHICS TEXT ELEMENTS, Section 21.4](#).

_perrbar M×9 matrix, draws one error bar per row of the input matrix. If scalar 0, no error bars will be drawn. Location values are in plot coordinates.

[M,1] x location.

[M,2] left end of error bar.

[M,3] right end of error bar.

[M,4] y location.

[M,5] bottom of error bar.

[M,6] top of error bar.

[M,7] line type:

- 1 dashed
- 2 dotted
- 3 short dashes
- 4 closely spaced dots
- 5 dots and dashes
- 6 solid

[M,8] color, see [COLORS, Section 21.5](#).

[M,9] line thickness.. This value may be 0 or greater. A value of 0 is normal line width.

To create one error bar using solid lines, use

```
_perrbar = { 1 0 2 2 1 3 6 2 0 };
```

_pframe 2×1 vector, controls frame around axes area. On 3-D plots this is a cube surrounding the 3-D workspace.

- [1] 1 frame on
0 frame off
- [2] 1 tick marks on frame
0 no tick marks

The default is a frame with tick marks.

_pgrid 2×1 vector to control grid.

- [1] grid through tick marks:
 - 0 no grid
 - 1 dotted grid
 - 2 fine dotted grid
 - 3 solid grid
- [2] grid subdivisions between major tick marks:
 - 0 no subdivisions
 - 1 dotted lines at subdivisions
 - 2 tick marks only at subdivisions

The default is no grid and tick marks at subdivisions.

_plctrl scalar or K×1 vector to control whether lines and/or symbols will be displayed for the main curves. This also controls the frequency of symbols on main curves. The number of rows (K) is equal to the number of individual curves to be plotted in the graph. Default is 0.

- 0 draw line only.
- >0 draw line and symbols every **_plctrl** points.
- <0 draw symbols only every **_plctrl** points.
- 1 all of the data points will be plotted with no connecting lines.

This example draws a line for the first curve, draws a line and plots a symbol every 10 data points for the second curve, and plots symbols only every 5 data points for the third curve:

```
_plctrl = { 0, 10, -5 };
```

_plegctl scalar or 1×4 vector, legend control variable.
If scalar 0, no legend is drawn (default). If nonzero scalar, create legend in the default location in the lower right of the page.

If 1×4 vector, set as follows:

- [1] legend position coordinate units:
 - 1 coordinates are in plot coordinates
 - 2 coordinates are in inches
 - 3 coordinates are in pixel
- [2] legend text font size, where $1 \leq \text{size} \leq 9$. Default is 5.
- [3] x coordinate of lower left corner of legend box.
- [4] y coordinate of lower left corner of legend box.

This example puts a legend in the lower right corner:

```
_plegctl = 1;
```

This example creates a smaller legend and positions it 2.5 inches from the left and 1 inch from the bottom.

```
_plegctl = { 2 3 2.5 1 };
```

_plegstr string, legend entry text. Text for multiple curves is separated by a null byte (“\000”).

For example:

```
_plegstr = "Curve 1\000Curve 2\000Curve 3";
```

_plev M×1 vector, user-defined contour levels for **contour**. Default is 0. (See **contour** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

_pline M×9 matrix, to draw lines, circles, or radii. Each row controls one item to be drawn. If this is a scalar zero, nothing will be drawn. Default is 0.

[M,1] item type and coordinate system:

- 1 line in plot coordinates
- 2 line in inch coordinates
- 3 line in pixel coordinates
- 4 circle in plot coordinates
- 5 circle in inch coordinates
- 6 radius in plot coordinates
- 7 radius in inch coordinates

[M,2] line type:

- 1 dashed
- 2 dotted
- 3 short dashes
- 4 closely spaced dots
- 5 dots and dashes
- 6 solid

[M,3-7] coordinates and dimensions:

if item type is line ($1 \leq \text{_pline}[M,1] \leq 3$):

[M,3] x starting point.

[M,4] y starting point.

[M,5] x ending point.

[M,6] y ending point.

[M,7] 0 if this is a continuation of a curve, 1 if this begins a new curve.

if item type is circle ($\text{_pline}[M,1] = 4$ or $\text{_pline}[M,1] = 5$):

[M,3] x center of circle.

[M,4] y center of circle.

[M,5] radius.

[M,6] starting point of arc in radians.

[M,7] ending point of arc in radians.

if item type is radius ($\text{_pline}[M,1] = 6$ or $\text{_pline}[M,1] = 7$):

[M,3] x center of circle.

[M,4] y center of circle.

[M,5] beginning point of radius, 0 is the center of the circle.

[M,6] ending point of radius.

[M,7] angle in radians.

[M,8] color, see **COLORS**, Section 21.5.

[M,9] controls line thickness. This value may be zero or greater. A value of zero is normal line width.

_pline3d M×9 matrix. Allows extra lines to be added to an **xyz** or **surface** graph in 3-D plot coordinates.

[M,1] x starting point.

[M,2] y starting point.

[M,3] z starting point.

[M,4] x ending point.

[M,5] y ending point.

[M,6] z ending point.

[M,7] color.

[M,8] line type:

- 1 dashed
- 2 dotted
- 3 short dashes
- 4 closely spaced dots
- 5 dots and dashes
- 6 solid

[M,9] line thickness, 0 = normal width.

[M,10] hidden line flag, 1 = obscured by surface, 0 = not obscured.

_plotshf 2×1 vector, distance of plot from lower left corner of output page in inches.

[1] x distance.

[2] y distance.

If scalar 0, there will be no shift. Default is 0.

Note: Used internally. (For the same functionality, see **axmargin** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.) This is used by the graphic panel routines. The user must not set this when using the graphic panel procedures.

_plotsiz 2×1 vector, size of the axes area in inches. If scalar 0, the maximum size will be used.

Note: Used internally. (For the same functionality, see **axmargin** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.) This is used by the graphic panel routines. The user must not set this when using the graphic panel procedures.

_pltype scalar or K×1 vector, line type for the main curves. If this is a nonzero scalar, all lines will be this type. If scalar 0, line types will be default styles. Default is 0.

- 1 dashed
- 2 dotted
- 3 short dashes
- 4 closely spaced dots
- 5 dots and dashes
- 6 solid

The default line types come from a global vector called **_plsel**. This vector can be changed by editing `pgraph.dec` to change the default line types (**_plsel** is not documented elsewhere.)

_plwidth scalar or K×1 vector, line thickness for main curves. This value may be zero or greater. A value of zero is normal (single pixel) line width. Default is 0.

_pmcolor 9×1 vector, color values to use for plot, see COLORS, Section 21.5.

- [1] axes.
- [2] axes numbers.
- [3] X axis label.
- [4] Y axis label.
- [5] Z axis label.
- [6] title.
- [7] box.
- [8] date.
- [9] background.

If this is scalar, it will be expanded to a 9×1 vector.

_pmsgctl L×7 matrix of control information for printing the strings contained in **_pmsgstr**.

[L,1] horizontal location of lower left corner of string.

[L,2] vertical location of lower left corner of string.

[L,3] character height in inches.

[L,4] angle in degrees to print string. This may be -180 to 180 relative to the positive X axis.

[L,5] location coordinate system.

1 location of string in plot coordinates

2 location of string in inches

[L,6] color.

[L,7] font thickness, may be 0 or greater. If 0 use normal line width.

_pmsgstr string, contains a set of messages to be printed on the plot. Each message is separated from the next by a null byte (\000). The number of messages must correspond to the number of rows in the **_pmsgctl** control matrix. This can be created as follows:

```
_pmsgstr = "Message one.\000Message two.";
```

_pnotify scalar, controls window output during the creation of the graph. Default is 1.

0 no activity to the window while writing .tkf file

1 display progress as fonts are loaded, and .tkf file is being generated

_pnum scalar, 2×1 or 3×1 vector for independent control for axes numbering. The first element controls the X axis numbers, the second controls the Y axis numbers, and the third (if set) controls the Z axis numbers. Default is 1.

If this value is scalar, it will be expanded to a vector.

0 no axes numbers displayed

1 axes numbers displayed, vertically oriented on axis

2 axes numbers displayed, horizontally oriented on axis

For example:

```
_pnum = { 0, 2 }; /* no X axis numbers, */
                /* horizontal on Y axis */
```

_pnumht	scalar, size of axes numbers in inches. If 0, a size of .13 will be used. Default is 0.
_prostate	scalar. If 0, no rotation, if 1, plot will be rotated 90 degrees. Default is 0.
_pscreen	scalar. If 1, display graph in window, if 0, do not display graph in window. Default is 1.
_psilent	scalar. If 0, a beep will sound when the graph is finished drawing to the window. Default is 1 (no beep).
_pstype	scalar or K×1 vector, controls symbol used at data points. To use a single symbol type for all points, set this to one of the following scalar values:

1 circle	8 solid circle
2 square	9 solid square
3 triangle	10 solid triangle
4 plus	11 solid plus
5 diamond	12 solid diamond
6 inverted triangle	13 solid inverted triangle
7 star	14 solid star

If this is a vector, each line will have a different symbol. Symbols will repeat if there are more lines than symbol types. Default is 0 (no symbols are shown).

_psurf	2×1 vector, controls 3-D surface characteristics.
[1]	if 1, show hidden lines. Default is 0.
[2]	color for base, see COLORS, Section 21.5. The base is an outline of the X-Y plane with a line connecting each corner to the surface. If 0, no base is drawn. Default is 7.

_psym	<p>M×7 matrix, M extra symbols will be plotted.</p> <p>[M,1] x location.</p> <p>[M,2] y location.</p> <p>[M,3] symbol type, see _pstype earlier.</p> <p>[M,4] symbol height. If this is 0, a default height of 5.0 will be used.</p> <p>[M,5] symbol color, see COLORS, Section 21.5.</p> <p>[M,6] type of coordinates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1 plot coordinates2 inch coordinates <p>[M,7] line thickness. A value of zero is normal line width.</p>
_psym3d	<p>M×7 matrix for plotting extra symbols on a 3-D (surface or xyz) graph.</p> <p>[M,1] x location in plot coordinates.</p> <p>[M,2] y location in plot coordinates.</p> <p>[M,3] z location in plot coordinates.</p> <p>[M,4] symbol type, see _pstype earlier.</p> <p>[M,5] symbol height. If this is 0, a default height of 5.0 will be used.</p> <p>[M,6] symbol color, see COLORS, Section 21.5.</p> <p>[M,7] line thickness. A value of 0 is normal line width.</p> <p>Use _psym for plotting extra symbols in inch coordinates.</p>
_psymsiz	<p>scalar or K×1 vector, symbol size for the symbols on the main curves. This is NOT related to _psym. If 0, a default size of 5.0 is used.</p>
_ptek	<p>string, name of Tektronix format graphics file. This must have a .tkf extension. If this is set to a null string, the graphics file will be suppressed. The default is graphic.tkf.</p>
_pticout	<p>scalar. If 1, tick marks point outward on graphs. Default is 0.</p>
_ptitlht	<p>scalar, the height of the title characters in inches. If this is 0, a default height of approx. 0.13 inch will be used.</p>

_pversno	string, the graphics version number.
_pxpmax	scalar, the maximum number of places to the right of the decimal point for the X axis numbers. Default is 12.
_pxsci	scalar, the threshold in digits above which the data for the X axis will be scaled and a power of 10 scaling factor displayed. Default is 4.
_pypmax	scalar, the maximum number of places to the right of the decimal point for the Y axis numbers. Default is 12.
_pysci	scalar, the threshold in digits above which the data for the Y axis will be scaled and a power of 10 scaling factor displayed. Default is 4.
_pzclr	scalar, row vector, or K×2 matrix, Z level color control for procedures surface and contour . (See surface in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)
_pzoom	1×3 row vector, magnifies the graphics display for zooming in on detailed areas of the graph. If scalar 0, no magnification is performed. Default is 0. <div> <div>[1] magnification value. 1 is normal size.</div> <div>[2] horizontal center of zoomed plot (0-100).</div> <div>[3] vertical center of zoomed plot (0-100).</div> </div> <p>To see the upper left quarter of the screen magnified 2 times use:</p> <pre>_pzoom = { 2 25 75 };</pre>
_pzpmax	scalar, the maximum number of places to the right of the decimal point for the Z axis numbers. Default is 3.
_pzsci	scalar, the threshold in digits above which the data for the Z axis will be scaled and a power of 10 scaling factor displayed. Default is 4.

Graphics Editor 22

22.1 Introduction to the Graphics Editor

The **GAUSS** graphics editor is a utility for composing pages containing **GAUSS** graphics files. Its primary purpose is to provide the user with a toolbox for creating and annotating graphs created by **GAUSS** using all of the fonts available on your Windows system. It is not meant to be a full-featured publishing tool but rather a supplemental utility for dynamically importing and easily arranging multiple graphics files on a single page.

22.1.1 Overview

The graphics editor allows the user to interactively create any number of graphical objects for composing documents. It is launched by selecting Tools from the **GAUSS** menu bar, then Graphics Editor, or by clicking on the Graphics Editor icon on the **GAUSS** toolbar.

Once the document has been created, it may be saved for later modification. All of the objects and their respective properties contained in the document are preserved. The document may also be exported to other formats.

22.2 Graphics Editor Workspace

The graphics editor workspace is a window allowing access to a single page with tools for composing the document. The page is defined by user-defined properties such as page orientation and margin settings.

It provides a dialog bar for user-selection of the current pen and brush properties.

Zoom capability is provided for detailed accuracy and accomodating a wide-variety of computer display resolutions.

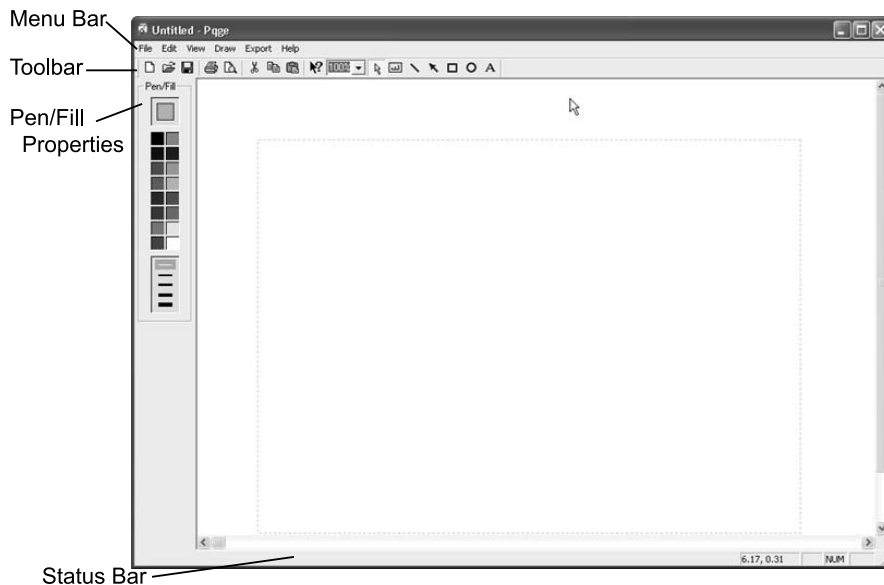


Figure 22.1: Graphics Editor Workspace

22.2.1 Toolbar

The toolbar is displayed across the top of the application window, below the menu bar. The toolbar provides quick mouse access to many tools used in the graphics editor.

To hide or display the toolbar, choose Toolbar from the View menu (ALT, V, T).

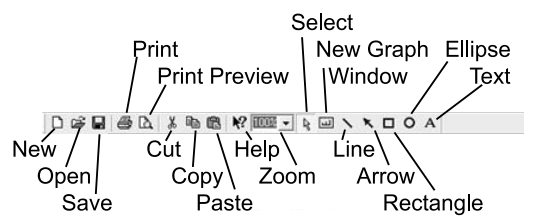


Figure 22.2: Graphics Editor Toolbar

22.2.2 Status Bar

The status bar is displayed at the bottom of the graphics editor window. To display or hide the status bar, use the Status Bar command in the View menu.

The left area of the status bar describes actions of menu items as you use the arrow keys to navigate through menus. This area similarly shows messages that describe the actions of toolbar buttons as you depress them, before releasing them. If after viewing the description of the toolbar command you wish not to execute the command, then release the mouse button while the pointer is off the toolbar button.

In addition, the status bar provides short hints while using the graphical interface such as defining, sizing, and moving objects.



Figure 22.3: Graphics Editor Status Bar

Indicator Description

The remaining status bar panes indicate the following:

The x/y mouse position on the page (in units specified in the View Properties menu).

CAPS indicates the CAPS LOCK key is latched down.

NUM indicates the NUM LOCK key is latched down.

SCRL indicates the SCROLL LOCK key is latched down.

22.2.3 File menu commands

The File menu offers the following commands:

New	Opens a new, untitled document (CTRL+N).
Open	Opens an existing document in a new window (CTRL+O).
Import	Imports a file of another format. Currently only the GAUSS graphics format .tkf is supported.
Save	Saves the active document to its current name and directory. When you save a document for the first time, the graphics editor displays the Save As dialog box so you can name your document (CTRL+S). If you want to change the name and directory of an existing document before saving it, choose the Save As command.
Save As	Saves and names the active document. The graphics editor displays the Save As dialog box so you can name your document.
Print	Prints a document. This command presents a Print dialog box where you may specify the ranges of pages to be printed, the number of copies, the destination printer, and other printer setup options (CTRL+P).
Print Preview	Displays the active document as it would appear when printed. When you choose this command, the main window will be replaced with a print preview window in which one or two pages will be displayed in their printed format. The print preview toolbar offers you the option to view either one or two pages at a time, move back and forth through the document, zoom in and out of pages, and initiate a print job.

Print Setup	Allows you to select a printer and printer connection. This command presents a Print Setup dialog box where you specify the printer and its connection.
Exit	Ends the graphics editor session. The graphics editor prompts you to save documents with unsaved changes (ALT+F4).

22.2.4 Edit menu commands

The Edit menu offers the following commands:

Undo	Reverses the last editing action, if possible (CTRL+Z or ALT+BACKSPACE). The name of the command changes depending on what the last action was. The Undo command changes to Can't Undo on the menu if the last action cannot be reversed.
Cut	Removes the currently selected data from the document and put it on the clipboard (CTRL+X). This command is unavailable if there is no data currently selected. Cutting data to the clipboard replaces the contents previously stored there.
Copy	Copies currently selected data onto the clipboard (CTRL+C). This command is unavailable if there is no data currently selected. Copying data to the clipboard replaces the contents previously stored there.
Paste	Inserts a copy of the clipboard contents at the insertion point (CTRL+V). This command is unavailable if the clipboard is empty.

22.2.5 View menu commands

The View menu offers the following commands:

Toolbar	Displays and hides the Toolbar, which includes buttons for some of the most common commands such as File Open. A check mark appears next to the
----------------	---

menu item when the Toolbar is displayed. See **TOOLBAR**, Section ??, for help on using the toolbar.

Status Bar Displays and hides the Status Bar, which describes the action to be executed by the selected menu or depressed toolbar button and keyboard latch state. A check mark appears next to the menu item when the Status Bar is displayed. See **STATUS BAR**, Section ??, for help on using the status bar.

Properties Allows you to change user-defined page/view settings. See **SETTING THE PAGE/VIEW PROPERTIES**, Section 22.2.11, for more information.

Zoom Allows you to change user-defined zoom control. See **USING THE ZOOM FEATURE**, Section 22.2.11, for more information.

22.2.6 Draw menu commands

The Draw menu offers the following commands; see **GRAPHICAL OBJECTS**, Section 22.2.13, for more detailed information on each.

Select Puts the editor into object selection state.

TKF Graphics Window Opens a **GAUSS** graphics window.

Line Draws a line.

Arrow Draws an arrow.

Rectangle Draws a rectangle.

Ellipse Draws an ellipse.

Text Allows you to enter text.

22.2.7 Export menu commands

The Export menu offers the following commands; see FILE MANAGEMENT, Section 22.3, for more detailed information on each.

Encapsulated Postscript	Writes an Encapsulated Postscript file.
JPEG Image	Writes a JPEG compressed image file.
Windows Metafile	Writes a Windows Enhanced Metafile.

22.2.8 Help menu commands

The Help menu offers the following commands, which provide you assistance with this application:

Help Topics	Displays the opening screen of Help. From the opening screen, you can jump to step-by-step instructions for using the graphics editor and various types of reference information. Once you open Help, you can click the Contents button whenever you want to return to the opening screen.
About	Displays the copyright notice and version number of this application.

22.2.9 Object Action Context Menu

Once an object has been selected, its action context menu may be displayed by right-clicking inside the object.

The following actions may be selected from this menu:

Refresh	Redraws the object.
----------------	---------------------

Cut	Removes the currently selected data from the document and put it on the clipboard. This command is unavailable if there is no data currently selected. Cutting data to the clipboard replaces the contents previously stored there.
Copy	Copies currently selected data onto the clipboard. This command is unavailable if there is no data currently selected.
Delete	Deletes currently selected data. This command is unavailable if there is no data currently selected.
Z-Order	<p>Changes the objects position in the z-order of the document's list. The z-order allows the user to control in what order the object is drawn on the page. To change, select the Z-Order menu item from the action context menu and select one of the following:</p> <p>Move to Top - Moves the object to the top of the list. Move to Bottom - Moves the object to the bottom of the list.</p>
Edit	Allows you to modify the object. This menu item currently applies to text objects only.
Deselect	De-selects the object.
Properties	Opens the object's property dialog.

22.2.10 Page Context Menu

The Page Context menu is displayed by pressing the right mouse button when no object is selected.

The following actions may be selected from this menu:

Paste	Copies an object from the clipboard to the page if one is available.
Retain Aspect Ratio	Check or uncheck the aspect ratio state. When checked, this forces the object to retain its aspect ratio while sizing it from the top or sides; sizing from the corners overrides this setting.

See MODIFYING THE GRAPHICAL OBJECTS, Section [22.2.14](#), for more information.

22.2.11 Setting the Page/View Properties

The following describes how to set various page and view properties, including how to set the page orientation and margins, use the zoom feature, and set the color options.

Setting the Page Orientation and Margins

Page Orientation	The document page orientation of landscape or portrait is set from the Properties dialog under the View menu.
Measure Units	Allows all coordinates and measurements to be in inches or centimeters.
Reference Margin	<p>A reference margin indicating the document's current orientation and margin settings is also available. This is useful for customizing your page to be compatible with the printer currently in use. Because printer margins vary from one printer to another, it is useful to be able to set your page to the margins that most accurately match your printer.</p> <p>The reference margin settings are available in the Properties dialog under the View menu.</p>
Reset Colors	Pushing this button will reset the available colors to the initial IBM 16-color scheme. Each color may be set to a custom color; see PEN/FILL PROPERTIES, Section 22.2.12 for more information.

Using the Zoom Feature

To set the zoom, click the zoom drop-down control on the toolbar or select Zoom in the View menu.

Setting the Color Options

You may reset the colors to the original IBM 16-color scheme by pressing the Reset Colors to Initial button.

22.2.12 Setting the Pen/Fill Properties

All drawing is done with a currently selected pen and brush. The current pen has a width attribute and color attribute.

The current brush (for painting object backgrounds) has a color attribute.

Setting the Pen Color

Left-click in one of the color boxes in the dialog bar to set the current color. The dialog bar is located to the left of the drawing area. The color is immediately displayed in the sample box at the top of the color box area.

Double-clicking in the color box will allow you to customize that particular color.

Setting the Pen Width

Left-click in one of the width boxes in the dialog bar shown below the color boxes.

Setting the Fill (brush) Color

Right-click in one of the color boxes in the dialog bar to set the current fill color. The dialog bar is located to the left of the drawing area. The fill color is immediately displayed in the sample box at the top of the color box area.

Transparent Fill	To set a transparent fill color, right-click in the sample box at the top of the color boxes. This will cause the drawing object to have no fill associated with it and allow objects beneath it to show through.
-------------------------	---

Customizing the Color	Double-clicking in the color box will allow you to customize that particular color.
------------------------------	---

22.2.13 Graphical Objects

The graphics editor allows the user to interactively create any number of the following graphical objects for composing your document:

Creating a TKF Graphics window

A TKF Graphics Window is a window object containing a **GAUSS**-generated graphics file.

To create a TKF graphics window, select the Graphics Window menu item from the Draw menu or press the Create TKF window icon on the toolbar.

A properties dialog is presented which allows the selection of a **GAUSS**-generated TKF graphics file. There are two ways to do this. If one or more graphics files are currently being displayed in **GAUSS**, those filenames will appear in the Active Graphs drop-down control and may be selected. Otherwise, pressing the Browse button will present a common open file dialog for selecting the file.

The graphics window border and fill colors may be set using their respective Color buttons.

Once the file has been selected and the user presses OK, the graphics window is created in a default size located at the top-left corner of the page.

At this time, the window object may be modified.

Creating a Text Object

To create a text object, select the Text menu item from the Draw menu or press the Draw text button on the toolbar.

Next, position the mouse where you want the top-left corner of your text then press and hold the left mouse button. (You may also move the object by pressing and holding the right mouse button while keeping the left button depressed). Drag the mouse to the bottom-left corner and let up on the mouse button.

The text region will be redrawn in the current background fill color and contain a text cursor inside. At this point you may enter your text at the cursor using the last selected text font.

If the text requires more lines than the current bounding box allows, the box will be resized as needed.

To save your text when you have finished typing, press the OK icon on the text toolbar indicated by a green check mark or press the SHIFT+ENTER key. Clicking the mouse button outside the text window will also save the text and complete the operation.

The box will be redrawn with the proper font background, border color and margin settings.

To cancel out of the text and lose changes, press the Cancel icon on the text toolbar indicated by a red X or press the ESCAPE key.

Note: The text object may be rotated at any angle from the Object Properties menu.

Creating a Line

To create a line, select the Line menu item from the Draw menu or press the Draw line button on the toolbar. This puts the editor into the draw line state indicated by a crosshair cursor.

Next, position the mouse where you want the first end point of the line then press and hold the left mouse button. (You may also move the line by pressing and holding the right mouse button while keeping the left button depressed). Drag the mouse to the location for the second end point and release the mouse button.

Note: Pressing the CTRL key while defining a line or arrow forces the line to be vertical or horizontal.

The line will be redrawn in the current pen color.

At any time after the above process you may modify the line object.

Creating an Arrow

To create an arrow, select the Arrow menu item from the Draw menu or press the Draw arrow button on the toolbar. This puts the editor into the draw arrow state indicated by a crosshair cursor. Arrow style controls for defining the arrow appear on the dialog bar to the left of the drawing area.

Defining the endpoints are identical to the steps for defining a line above. However, the arrow head size and shape may be set using the additional arrow style controls in the dialog bar.

Once the second endpoint is defined, the arrow will be redrawn in the current pen color.

At any time after the above process you may modify the arrow object.

Arrow Styles

There are a combination of two styles of arrows: Open/Closed, and Single/Double-headed arrows.

A closed arrow is one whose arrowhead is filled in with the current pen color. An open one has no fill.

A single-headed arrow is a line with an arrowhead on one end. A double-headed arrow has an arrowhead at both ends.

Creating a Rectangle

To create a rectangle object, select the Rectangle menu item from the Draw menu or press the Draw rectangle button on the toolbar. This puts the editor into the draw rectangle state indicated by a crosshair cursor.

Next, position the mouse where you want the top-left corner then press and hold the left mouse button. (You may also move the object by pressing and holding the right mouse button while keeping the left button depressed). Drag the mouse to the bottom-left corner and release the mouse button.

The rectangle will be redrawn in the current background fill and border color.

At any time after the above process you may modify the rectangle object.

Creating an Ellipse

Note: a circle is first created when defining an ellipse. After the circle has been defined it may be dynamically reshaped into an ellipse of the desired size using the mouse.

To create the circle, select the Ellipse menu item from the Draw menu or press the Draw ellipse button on the toolbar. This puts the editor into the draw ellipse state indicated by a crosshair cursor.

Next, position the mouse where you want the center of the circle then press and hold the left mouse button. (You may also move the object by pressing and holding the right mouse button while keeping the left button depressed). Drag the mouse to the desired radius and release the mouse button.

The circle will be redrawn in the current background fill and border color.

At any time after the above process you may modify the circle to any other elliptical size and shape.

22.2.14 Modifying the Graphical Objects

First, ensure you are in selection mode by pressing the Select toolbar button or choosing the Select item in the Draw menu. Selection mode is indicated with an arrow cursor.

Next, select the object you want to modify by left-clicking anywhere inside or on the object. It will then become highlighted.

Once selected, it may be sized, moved, or modified with one of the actions listed in the object's action context menu.

Aspect Ratio

You can force an object's aspect ratio to be retained while sizing it by checking this menu item from the Page Context menu.

When this is checked, all the sides of the object are sized by the same amount as the side being moved, eliminating the need to resize all sides independently.

If the object is being sized by a corner point, this feature is ignored, eliminating the need for the user to check/uncheck the aspect ratio menu item needlessly.

The aspect ratio feature has no effect for lines and arrows.

Object Properties

The properties dialog box allows you to modify various attributes of the object depending on its type.

See GRAPHICAL OBJECTS, Section [22.2.13](#), for more information about object properties.

Sizing an Object

First select the object.

Next, click and hold the left mouse button in one of the object's highlight points. Depending on the type of object, the new size is defined by how you move the mouse. Lifting the mouse button sets the new size and causes it to be redrawn.

If the object is a TKF graphics window, text object, rectangle, or ellipse, then the aspect ratio may be retained depending on the selection state of the aspect ratio menu item state when grabbing one of the four sides.

Grabbing the corner of an object allows you to size it in any direction ignoring the state of the aspect ratio menu.

If the object is a line or arrow, then it may be moved during the sizing operation by pressing and holding the right mouse button while still depressing the left mouse button.

Note: A rotated text object may not be sized. It may only be sized in a non-rotated state.

Moving an Object

First select the object.

Next, click and hold the left mouse button somewhere inside the object. Drag the object to the new location and lift the mouse button. The object is then redrawn in the new location.

If the object is a line or arrow, then it may also be moved during the sizing operation.

22.3 File Management

The graphics editor stores the document as a list of vector-based graphical objects. These are binary files and cannot be edited by hand. It uses a default extension of `.pge`.

See the `FILE MENU COMMAND` for available file operations.

You may export your document to other formats for inclusion in web pages, word-processors, and publishing applications.

22.3.1 Exporting Files

The Export menu enables you to easily export graphic files to some of the most frequently used graphic formats.

Writing an Encapsulated Postscript Image

To write an Encapsulated Postscript file, select the Encapsulated Postscript menu item from the Export menu. This displays the entire file dialog.

Filename	Enter or browse to the desired output filename. The default extension is .eps.
Convert lines to Black	Check this item if you want to convert all colors in the image to black.
Scale Factor	Enter a scale factor if necessary. By default, the graphics editor uses a very high internal resolution for the best possible quality. However, some applications are unable to correctly scale the data when importing. This may be worked around by scaling the data during the export stage.
Minimum line width	Enter the minimum line width value if you want to darken the lines in the exported file.

Note About Fonts

Although the fonts you select for your text box may appear fine in the graphics editor, it is possible the target application importing it may not interpret them correctly. Every application has its own EPS interpreter, and the availability of your font depends on it. If you are having problems of this type, try using the Enhanced Metafile format conversion. This format has no such font limitations.

Writing a JPEG Image

A JPEG image file is a widely used bitmap format for inclusion in web pages due to its compression characteristics.

To write a JPEG file, select the JPEG Image File menu item from the Export menu.

Note: Because JPEG is a bitmap format, the image written to the file is exactly as seen on the display. Thus you may be required to zoom out on some lower-resolution displays to obtain an image of the entire document.

Writing a TIFF Image

A TIFF (Tag Image File Format) image file is an older but widely used bitmap format.

To write a TIFF file, select the TIFF Image File menu item from the Export menu.

Note: Because TIFF is a bitmap format, the image written to the file is exactly as seen on the display. Thus you may be required to zoom out on some lower-resolution displays to obtain an image of the entire document.

Windows Metafile

An enhanced metafile is a vector-based file and is considered the best method for export/import on the Microsoft Windows platform.

To create a Windows Enhanced Metafile, select the Windows Metafile menu item from the Export menu.

Autoscale

Checking this option forces the translated to automatically scale the Enhanced Metafile. This is the best setting for most applications for importing. However, some applications require a more precise format. If the importing application has trouble, uncheck this option.

Time and Date 23

GAUSS offers a comprehensive set of time and date functions. These functions afford the user the ability to return the current time and date, to carry out most related calculations and format the results for output. **GAUSS** also allows the user to perform timed iterations.

In the year 1 AD the calendar in general use was the Julian calendar. The Gregorian calendar that we use today was not invented until the late 1500's. This new calendar changed the method of calculating leap years on century marks. With the Julian system simply every fourth year was a leap year. The Gregorian system made every fourth year a leap year with the exception of century marks which are only leap years if divisible by 400. The British adoption of this calendar, which the **GAUSS** date functions are based on, did not happen until the year 1752. In that year eleven days were removed; September 2, 1752 was followed by September 14, 1752.

dtvnormal and **utctodtv** are accurate back to 1 AD. The rest of the **GAUSS** date functions assume a normal Gregorian system regardless of year. Thus, they will not account for the days taken out in September of 1752, nor will they account for all century marks being leap years before the adoption of the Gregorian system in 1752.

The time is given by your operating system, daylight savings time is not automatically accounted for by **GAUSS** in calculations.

23.1 Time and Date Formats

The Time and Date formats in **GAUSS** fall into one of two major categories, matrix/vector and string. The matrix/vector formats can be used for either calculations or if desired for output. The string formats are, however, mostly for use as output. Some manipulation of strings is possible with the use of the **stof** function.

A 4×1 vector is returned by both the **date** and **time** functions.

```
d = date;
d;

1997.00    /* Year */
5.00000    /* Month */
29.0000    /* Day */
56.4700    /* Hundredths of a second since midnight */

t = time;
t;

10.00      /* Hours since midnight */
17.00      /* Minutes */
33.00      /* Seconds */
13.81      /* Hundredths of a second */
```

These vectors can be written to a string of the desired form by passing them through the corresponding function.

```
d = { 1997, 5, 29, 56.47 };
datestr(d);

5/29/97

datestrymd(d);
```

```
19970529
```

```
t = { 10, 17, 33, 13.81 };  
timestr(t);
```

```
10:17:33
```

A list and brief description of these, and other related functions is provided in the table in section [23.2](#).

Another major matrix/vector format is the dtv, or date and time vector. The dtv vector is a 1×8 vector used with the **dtvnormal** and **utctodtv** functions. The format for the dtv vector is:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Month</i>	<i>Day</i>	<i>Hour</i>	<i>Min</i>	<i>Sec</i>	<i>DoW</i>	<i>DiY</i>
1955	4	21	4	16	0	4	110

Where:

<i>Year</i>	Year, four digit integer.
<i>Month</i>	1-12, Month in year.
<i>Day</i>	1-31, Day of month.
<i>Hour</i>	0-23, Hours since midnight.
<i>Min</i>	0-59, Minutes.
<i>Sec</i>	0-59, Seconds.
<i>DoW</i>	0-6, Day of week, 0=Sunday.
<i>DiY</i>	0-365, Days since Jan 1 of current year.

dtvnormal normalizes a date. The last two elements are ignored for input, as shown in the following example. They are set to the correct values on output. The input can be 1×8 or N×8.

```
dtv = { 1954 3 17 4 16 0 0 0 };  
dtv = dtvnormal(dtv);
```

```
1954 3 17 4 16 0 3 75
```

```
dtv[3] = dtv[3] + 400;  
print dtv;
```

```
1954 3 417 4 16 0 3 75
```

```
dtv = dtvnormal(dtv);  
print dtv;
```

```
1955 4 21 4 16 0 4 110
```

23.2 Time and Date Functions

Following is a partial listing of the time and date functions available in **GAUSS**.

datestr	Formats a Date vector to a string (mo/dy/yr).
datestrymd	Formats a Date vector to an eight character string of the type <code>yyyymmdd</code> .
dayinyr	Returns day number in the year of a given date.
_daypryr	Returns the number of days in the years given as input.
dtvnormal	Normalizes a 1×8 dtv vector.
etdays	Computes the difference in days between two dates.
ethsec	Computes the difference between two times in hundredths of a second.
etstr	Formats a time difference measured in hundredths of a second to a string.

_isleap	Returns a vector of ones and zeros, 1 if leap year 0 if not.
timestr	Formats a Time vector to a string hr:mn:sc.
timeutc	Universal time coordinate, number of seconds since January 1, 1970 Greenwich Mean Time.
utctodtv	Converts a scalar, number of seconds since, or before, Jan 1 1970 Greenwich mean time, to a dtv vector.

Below is an example of two ways to calculate a time difference.

```
d1 = { 1996, 12, 19, 82 };
d2 = { 1997, 4, 28, 4248879.3 };
dif = ethsec(d1,d2);
ds = etstr(dif);
```

```
dif = 1.1274488e + 09
```

```
ds = 130days 11hours 48minutes 7.97seconds
```

If only the number of days is needed use **etdays**.

```
d1 = { 1996, 12, 19, 82 };
d2 = { 1997, 4, 28, 4248879.3 };
dif = etdays(d1,d2);
```

```
dif = 130.00000
```

The last element of *d1* is optional when used as an input for **etdays**.

_isleap returns a matrix of ones and zeros, ones when the corresponding year is a leap year.

```
x = seqa(1970,1,20);
y = _isleap(x);
delif(x,abs(y-1));

1972.0000 /* Vector containing all leap years
1976.0000 between 1970 - 1989 */
1980.0000
1984.0000
1988.0000
```

To calculate the days of a number of consecutive years:

```
x = seqa(1983,1,3);
y = _daypryr(x);
sumc(y);

1096.0000
```

To add a portion of the following year:

```
g = { 1986, 2, 23, 0 };
dy = dayinyr(g);
sumc(y)+dy;

1150.0000
```

For more information on any of these functions see their respective pages in the command reference.

23.2.1 Timed Iterations

Iterations of a program can be timed with the use of the **hsec** function in the following manner.

```
et = hsec;           /* Start timer */

/* Segment of code to be timed */

et = (hsec-et)/100; /* Stop timer, convert to seconds */
```

In the case of a program running from one day into the next you would need to replace the **hsec** function with the **date** function. The **ethsec** function should be used to compute the time difference; a straight subtraction as in the previous example will not give the desired result.

```
dstart = date;           /* Start timer */

/* Segment of code to be timed */

dend = date;             /* Stop timer */

dif = ethsec(dstart,dend)/100; /* Convert time difference to seconds */
```


ATOG 24

ATOG is a stand-alone conversion utility that converts ASCII files into **GAUSS** data sets. ATOG can convert delimited and packed ASCII files into **GAUSS** data sets. ATOG can be run from a batch file or the command line; it is not run from a **GAUSS** prompt but rather from a command prompt window.

The syntax is:

```
atog cmdfile
```

where *cmdfile* is the name of the command file. If no extension is given, .cmd will be assumed. If no command file is specified, a command summary will be displayed.

24.1 Command Summary

The following commands are supported in ATOG:

append	Append data to an existing file.
complex	Treat data as complex variables.
input	The name of the ASCII input file.
invar	Input file variables (column names).
msym	Specify missing value character.
nocheck	Don't check data type or record length.
output	The name of the GAUSS data set to be created.
outtyp	Output data type.
outvar	List of variables to be included in output file.
preserve	Preserve case of variable names in output file.

The principle commands for converting an ASCII file that is delimited with spaces or commas are given in the following example:

```
input agex.asc;
output agex;
invar $ race # age pay $ sex region;
outvar region age sex pay;
outtyp d;
```

In this example, a delimited ASCII file `agex.asc` is converted to a double precision **GAUSS** data file `agex.dat`. The input file has five variables. The file will be interpreted as having five columns:

column	name	data type
1	race	character
2	AGE	numeric
3	PAY	numeric
4	sex	character
5	region	character

The output file will have four columns since the first column of the input file (race) is not included in the output variables. The columns of the output file are:

column	name	data type
1	region	character
2	AGE	numeric
3	sex	character
4	PAY	numeric

The variable names are saved in the file header. Unless **preserve** has been specified, the names of character variables will be saved in lowercase, and the names of numeric variables will be saved in uppercase. The **\$** in the **invar** statement specifies that the variables that follow are character type. The **#** specifies numeric. If **\$** and **#** are not used in an **invar** statement, the default is numeric.

Comments in command files must be enclosed between '@' characters.

24.2 Commands

A detailed explanation of each command follows.

append

Instructs ATOG to append the converted data to an existing data set:

```
append;
```

No assumptions are made regarding the format of the existing file. Make certain that the number, order, and type of data converted match the existing file. ATOG creates v96 format data files, so will only append to v96 format data files.

complex

Instructs ATOG to convert the ASCII file into a complex **GAUSS** data set:

```
complex;
```

Complex **GAUSS** data sets are stored by rows, with the real and imaginary parts interleaved, element by element. ATOG assumes the same structure for the ASCII input file, and will thus read TWO numbers out for EACH variable specified.

complex cannot be used with packed ASCII files.

input

Specifies the file name of the ASCII file to be converted. The full path name can be used in the file specification.

For example, the command:

```
input data.raw;
```

will expect an ASCII data file in the current working directory.

The command:

```
input /research/data/myfile.asc;
```

specifies a file to be located in the `/research/data` subdirectory.

invar

Soft Delimited ASCII Files Soft delimited files may have spaces, commas, or cr/lf as delimiters between elements. Two or more consecutive delimiters with no data between them are treated as one delimiter. For example:

```
invar age $ name sex # pay var[1:10] x[005];
```

The **invar** command above specifies the following variables:

column	name	data type
1	AGE	numeric
2	name	character
3	sex	character
4	PAY	numeric
5	VAR01	numeric
6	VAR02	numeric
7	VAR03	numeric
8	VAR04	numeric
9	VAR05	numeric
10	VAR06	numeric
11	VAR07	numeric
12	VAR08	numeric
13	VAR09	numeric
14	VAR10	numeric
15	X001	numeric
16	X002	numeric
17	X003	numeric
18	X004	numeric
19	X005	numeric

As the input file is translated, the first 19 elements will be interpreted as the first row (observation), the next 19 will be interpreted as the second row, and so on. If the number of elements in the file is not evenly divisible by 19, the final incomplete row will be dropped and a warning message will be given.

Hard Delimited ASCII Files Hard delimited files have a printable character as a delimiter between elements. Two delimiters without intervening data between them will be interpreted as a missing. If `\n` is specified as a delimiter, the file should have one element per line and blank lines will be considered missings. Otherwise, delimiters must be printable characters. The dot `'.'` is illegal and will always be interpreted as a missing value. To specify the backslash as a delimiter, use `\\`. If `\r` is specified as a delimiter, the file will be assumed to contain one case or record per line with commas between elements and no comma at the end of the line.

For hard delimited files the **delimit** subcommand is used with the **invar** command. The **delimit** subcommand has two optional parameters. The first parameter is the delimiter. The default is a comma. The second parameter is an 'N'. If the second parameter is present, ATOG will expect N delimiters. If it is not present, ATOG will expect N-1 delimiters.

This example:

```
invar delimit(, N) $ name # var[5];
```

will expect a file like this:

```
BILL , 222.3, 123.2, 456.4, 345.2, 533.2,  
STEVE, 624.3, 340.3,      , 624.3, 639.5,  
TOM , 244.2, 834.3, 602.3, 333.4, 822.5,
```

while

```
invar delimit(,) $ name # var[5];
```

or

```
invar delimit $ name # var[5];
```

will expect a file like this:

```
BILL , 222.3, 123.2, 456.4, 345.2, 533.2,
STEVE, 624.3, 340.3, , 624.3, 639.5,
TOM , 244.2, 834.3, 602.3, 333.4, 822.5
```

The difference between specifying N or N-1 delimiters can be seen here:

```
456.4, 345.2, 533.2,
, 624.3, 639.5,
602.3, 333.4,
```

If the **invar** statement specified three variables and N-1 delimiters, this file would be interpreted as having three rows containing a missing in the [2,1] element and the [3,3] element like this:

```
456.4 345.2 533.2
. 624.3 639.5
602.3 333.4 .
```

If N delimiters had been specified, this file would be interpreted as having two rows, and a final incomplete row that is dropped:

```
456.4 345.2 533.2
. 624.3 639.5
```

The spaces were shown only for clarity and are not significant in delimited files so:

```
BILL,222.3,123.2,456.4,345.2,533.2,
STEVE,624.3,340.3,,624.3,639.5,
TOM,244.2,834.3,602.3,333.4,822.5
```

would work just as well.

Linefeeds are significant only if **\n** is specified as the delimiter, or when using **\r**. This example:

```
invar delimit(\r) $ name # var[5];
```

will expect a file with no comma after the final element in each row:

```
BILL , 222.3, 123.2, 456.4, 345.2, 533.2
STEVE, 624.3, 340.3, 245.3, 624.3, 639.5
TOM , 244.2, 834.3, 602.3, 333.4, 822.5
```

Packed ASCII Files Packed ASCII files must have fixed length records. The **record** subcommand is used to specify the record length, and variables are specified by giving their type, starting position, length, and the position of an implicit decimal point if necessary.

outvar is not used with packed ASCII files. Instead, **invar** is used to specify only those variables to be included in the output file.

For packed ASCII files the syntax of the **invar** command is as follows:

```
invar record = reclen (format) variables (format) variables;
```

where,

reclen the total record length in bytes, including the final carriage return/line feed if applicable. Records must be fixed length.

format (*start,length,prec*) where:

start starting position of the field in the record, 1 is the first position. The default is 1.

length the length of the field in bytes. The default is 8.

prec optional; a decimal point will be inserted automatically *prec* places in from the RIGHT edge of the field.

If several variables are listed after a format definition, each succeeding field will be assumed to start immediately after the preceding field. If an asterisk is used to specify the starting position, the current logical default will be assumed. An asterisk in the length position will select the current default for both *length* and *prec*. This is illegal: (3,8.*).

The type change characters **\$** and **#** are used to toggle between character and numeric data type.

Any data in the record that is not defined in a format is ignored.

The examples below assume a 32-byte record with a carriage return/line feed occupying the last 2 bytes of each record. The data below can be interpreted in different ways using different **invar** statements:

ABCDEF GHIJ 12345678901234567890<CR><LF>					
position	1	10	20	30	31 32

This example:

```
invar record=32 $(1,3) group dept #(11,4.2) x[3] (*,5) y;
```

will result in:

variable	value	type
group	ABC	character
dept	DEF	character
X1	12.34	numeric
X2	56.78	numeric
X3	90.12	numeric
Y	34567	numeric

This example:

```
invar record=32 $ dept (*,2) id # (*,5) wage (*,2) area
```

will result in:

variable	value	type
dept	ABCDEFGH	character
id	IJ	character
WAGE	12345	numeric
AREA	67	numeric

msym

Specifies the character in the input file that is to be interpreted as a missing value. This example:

```
msym &;
```

defines the character ‘&’ as the missing value character. The default ‘.’ (dot) will always be interpreted as a missing value unless it is part of a numeric value.

nocheck

Optional; suppresses automatic checking of packed ASCII record length and output data type. The default is to increase the record length by 2 bytes if the second record in a packed file starts with cr/lf, and any files that have explicitly defined character data will be output in double precision regardless of the type specified.

output

The name of the **GAUSS** data set. A file will be created with the extension `.dat`. For example:

```
output /gauss/dat/test;
```

creates the file `test.dat` on the `/gauss/dat` directory.

outtyp

Selects the numerical accuracy of the output file. Use of this command should be dictated by the accuracy of the input data and storage space limitations. The format is:

```
outtyp fmt;
```

where *fmt* is:

- D or 8 double precision
- F or 4 single precision (default)
- I or 2 integer

The ranges of the different formats are:

bytes	data type	significant digits	range
2	integer	4	$-32768 \leq X \leq 32767$
4	single precision	6–7	$8.43 \times 10^{-37} \leq |X| \leq 3.37 \times 10^{+38}$
8	double precision	15–16	$4.19 \times 10^{-307} \leq |X| \leq 1.67 \times 10^{+308}$

If the output type is integer, the input numbers will be truncated to integers. If your data has more than 6 or 7 significant digits, specify **outtyp** as double.

Character data require **outtyp d**. ATOG automatically selects double precision when character data is specified in the **invar** statement, unless you have specified **nocheck**.

The precision of the storage selected does not affect the accuracy of **GAUSS** calculations using the data. **GAUSS** converts all data to double precision when the file is read.

outvar

Selects the variables to be placed in the **GAUSS** data set. The **outvar** command needs only the list of variables to be included in the output data set. They can be in any order. In this example:

```
invar $name #age pay $sex #var[1:10] x[005];  
outvar sex age x001 x003 var[1:8];
```

the **outvar** statement selects the following variables:

column	name	data type
1	sex	character
2	AGE	numeric
3	X001	numeric
4	X003	numeric
5	VAR01	numeric
6	VAR02	numeric
7	VAR03	numeric
8	VAR04	numeric
9	VAR05	numeric
10	VAR06	numeric
11	VAR07	numeric
12	VAR08	numeric

outvar is not used with packed ASCII files.

preserve case

Optional; preserves the case of variable names. The default is **no preserve case**, which will force variable names for numeric variables to upper case and character variables to lower case.

24.3 Examples

Example 1 The first example is a soft delimited ASCII file called `agex1.asc`. The file contains seven columns of ASCII data:

```
Jan 167.3 822.4 6.34E06 yes 84.3 100.4
Feb 165.8 987.3 5.63E06 no 22.4 65.6
Mar 165.3 842.3 7.34E06 yes 65.4 78.3
```

The ATOG command file is `agex1.cmd`:

```
input /gauss/agex1.asc;
output agex1;
invar $month #temp pres vol $true var[02];
outvar month true temp pres vol;
```

The output data set will contain the following information:

name	month	true	TEMP	PRES	VOL
case 1	Jan	yes	167.3	822.4	6.34e+6
case 2	Feb	no	165.8	987.3	5.63e+6
case 3	Mar	yes	165.3	842.3	7.34e+6
type	char	char	numeric	numeric	numeric

The data set is double precision since character data is explicitly specified.

Example 2 The second example is a packed ASCII file `xlod.asc`. The file contains 32-character records:

```

AEGDRFCSTy02345678960631567890<CR><LF>
EDJTAJPSTn12395863998064839561<CR><LF>
GWDNADMSTy19827845659725234451<CR><LF>
|           |           |           |   |   |
position 1      10      20      30 31  32
```

The ATOG command file is `xlod.cmd`:

```
input /gauss/dat/xlod.asc;  
output xlod2;  
invar record=32 $(1,3) client[2] zone (*,1) reg #(20,5) zip;
```

The output data set will contain the following information:

name	client1	client2	zone	reg	ZIP
case 1	AEG	DRF	CST	y	60631
case 2	EDJ	TAJ	PST	n	98064
case 3	GWD	NAD	MST	y	59725
type	char	char	char	char	numeric

The data set is double precision since character data is explicitly specified.

Example 3 The third example is a hard delimited ASCII file called `cplx.asc`. The file contains six columns of ASCII data:

```
456.4, 345.2, 533.2, -345.5, 524.5, 935.3,  
-257.6, 624.3, 639.5, 826.5, 331.4, 376.4,  
602.3, -333.4, 342.1, 816.7, -452.6, -690.8
```

The ATOG command file is `cplx.cmd`:

```
input /gauss/cplx.asc;  
output cplx;  
invar delimit #cvar[3];  
complex;
```

The output data set will contain the following information:

name	cvar1	cvar2	cvar3
case 1	456.4 + 345.2i	533.2 - 345.5i	524.5 + 935.3i
case 2	-257.6 + 624.3i	639.5 + 826.5i	331.4 + 376.4i
case 3	602.3 - 333.4i	342.1 + 816.7i	-452.6 - 690.8i
type	numeric	numeric	numeric

The data set defaults to single precision, since no character data is present, and no **outtyp** command is specified.

24.4 Error Messages

atog - Can't find input file

The ASCII input file could not be opened.

atog - Can't open output file

The output file could not be opened.

atog - Can't open temporary file

Notify Aptech Systems.

atog - Can't read temporary file

Notify Aptech Systems.

atog - Character data in output file

Setting output file to double precision

The output file contains character data. The type was set to double precision automatically.

atog - Character data longer than 8 bytes were truncated

The input file contained character elements longer than 8 bytes. The conversion continued and the character elements were truncated to 8 bytes.

atog - Disk Full

The output disk is full. The output file is incomplete.

atog - Found character data in numeric field

This is a warning that character data was found in a variable that was specified as numeric. The conversion will continue.

atog - Illegal command

An unrecognizable command was found in a command file.

atog - Internal error

Notify Aptech Systems.

atog - Invalid delimiter

The delimiter following the backslash is not supported.

atog - Invalid output type

Output type must be I, F, or D.

atog - Missing value symbol not found

No missing value was specified in an **msym** statement.

atog - No Input file

No ASCII input file was specified. The **input** command may be missing.

atog - No input variables

No input variable names were specified. The **invar** statement may be missing.

atog - No output file

No output file was specified. The **output** command may be missing.

**atog - output type d required for character data
Character data in output file will be lost**

Output file contains character data and is not double precision.

atog - Open comment

The command file has a comment that is not closed. Comments must be enclosed in @'s:

@ comment @

atog - Out of memory

Notify Aptech Systems.

atog - read error

A read error has occurred while converting a packed ASCII file.

atog - Record length must be 1-16384 bytes

The **record** subcommand has an out of range record length.

atog - Statement too long

Command file statements must be less than 16384 bytes.

atog - Syntax error at:

There is unrecognizable syntax in a command file.

atog - Too many input variables

More input variables were specified than available memory permitted.

atog - Too many output variables

More output variables were specified than available memory permitted.

atog - Too many variables

More variables were specified than available memory permitted.

atog - Undefined variable

A variable requested in an **outvar** statement was not listed in an **invar** statement.

atog WARNING: missing ')' at:

The parentheses in the **delimit** subcommand were not closed.

atog WARNING: some records begin with cr/lf

A packed ASCII file has some records that begin with a carriage return/linefeed. The record length may be wrong.

atog - complex illegal for packed ASCII file.

A **complex** command was encountered following an **invar** command with **record** specified.

atog - Cannot read packed ASCII. (complex specified)

An **invar** command with **record** specified was encountered following a **complex** command.

Error Messages 25

The following is a list of error messages intrinsic to the **GAUSS** programming language. Error messages generated by library functions are not included here.

G0002 File too large

load	Input file too large.
getf	Input file too large.

G0003 Indexing a matrix as a vector

A single index can be used only on vectors. Vectors have only one row or only one column.

G0004 Compiler stack overflow - too complex

An expression is too complex. Break it into smaller pieces. Notify Aptech Systems.

G0005 File is already compiled

G0006 Statement too long

Statement longer than 4000 characters.

G0007 End of file encountered

G0008 Syntax error

Compiler	Unrecognizable or incorrect syntax. Semicolon missing on previous statement.
create	Unrecognizable statement in command file, or numvar or outvar statement error.

G0009 Compiler pass out of memory

Compiler pass has run out of memory. Notify Aptech Systems.

G0010 Can't open output file

G0011 Compiled file must have correct extension

GAUSS requires a .gcn extension.

G0012 Invalid drive specifier

G0013 Invalid filename

G0014 File not found

G0015 Directory full

G0016 Too many #include's

#include'd files are nested too deep.

G0017 WARNING: local outside of procedure

A **local** statement has been found outside a procedure definition. The **local** statement will be ignored.

G0018 Read error in program file**G0019 Can't edit .gcg file****G0020 Not implemented yet**

Command not supported in this implementation.

G0021 use must be at the beginning of a program**G0022 User keyword cannot be used in expression****G0023 Illegal attempt to redefine symbol to an index variable****G0024 Invalid use of ->, probably should be .****G0025 Undefined symbol**

A symbol has been referenced that has not been given a definition.

G0026 Too many symbols

The global symbol table is full. (To set the limit, see **new** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

G0027 Invalid directory**G0028 Can't open configuration file**

GAUSS cannot find the configuration file.

G0029 Missing left parenthesis

G0030 Insufficient workspace memory

The space used to store and manipulate matrices and strings is not large enough for the operations attempted. (To make the main program space smaller and reclaim enough space to continue, see **new** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

G0031 Execution stack too deep - expression too complex

An expression is too complex. Break it into smaller pieces. Notify Aptech Systems.

G0032 fn function too large

G0033 Missing right index bracket

G0034 Missing arguments

G0035 Argument too large

G0036 Matrices are not conformable

For a description of the function or operator being used and conformability rules, see MATRIX OPERATORS, Section 7.2, or the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.

G0037 Result too large

The size of the result of an expression is greater than the limit for a single matrix.

G0038 Not all the eigenvalues can be computed

G0039 Matrix must be square to invert

G0040 Not all the singular values can be computed

G0041 Argument must be scalar

A matrix argument was passed to a function that requires a scalar.

G0042 Matrix must be square to compute determinant**G0043 Not implemented for complex matrices****G0044 Matrix must be real****G0045 Attempt to write complex data to real data set**

Data sets, unlike matrices, cannot change from real to complex after they are created. Use **create complex** to create a complex data set.

G0046 Columns don't match

The matrices must have the same number of columns.

G0047 Rows don't match

The matrices must have the same number of rows.

G0048 Matrix singular

The matrix is singular using the current tolerance.

G0049 Target matrix not complex**G0050 Out of memory for program**

The main program area is full. (To increase the main program space, see **new** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

G0051 Program too large

The main program area is full. (To increase the main program space, see **new** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

G0052 No square root - negative element

G0053 Illegal index

An illegal value has been passed in as a matrix index.

G0054 Index overflow

An illegal value has been passed in as a matrix index.

G0055 retp outside of procedure

A **retp** statement has been encountered outside a procedure definition.

G0056 Too many active locals

The execution stack is full. There are too many local variables active. Restructure your program. Notify Aptech Systems.

G0057 Procedure stack overflow - expression too complex

The execution stack is full. There are too many nested levels of procedure calls. Restructure your program. Notify Aptech Systems.

G0058 Index out of range

You have referenced a matrix element that is out of bounds for the matrix being referenced.

G0059 exec command string too long

G0060 Nonscalar index

G0061 Cholesky downdate failed

G0062 Zero pivot encountered

crout	The Crout algorithm has encountered a diagonal element equal to 0. Use croutp instead.
--------------	---

G0063 Operator missing

An expression contains two consecutive operands with no intervening operator.

G0064 Operand missing

An expression contains two consecutive operators with no intervening operand.

G0065 Division by zero!**G0066 Must be recompiled under current version**

You are attempting to use compiled code from a previous version of **GAUSS**. Recompile the source code under the current version.

G0068 Program compiled under GAUSS-386 real version**G0069 Program compiled under GAUSS-386i complex version****G0070 Procedure calls too deep**

You may have a runaway recursive procedure.

G0071 Type mismatch

You are using an argument of the wrong data type (e.g., inputting a matrix when a string is called for).

G0072 Too many files open

The limit on simultaneously open files is 10.

G0073 Redefinition of

declare	An attempt has been made to initialize a variable that is already initialized. This is an error when declare := is used. declare != or declare ?= may be a better choice for your application.
----------------	---

declare	An attempt has been made to redefine a string as a matrix or procedure, or vice versa. delete the symbol and try again. If this happens in the context of a single program, you have a programming error. If this is a conflict between different programs, use a new statement before running the second program.
let	A string is being forced to type matrix. Use an external matrix symbol ; statement before the let statement.

G0074 Can't run program compiled under GAUSS Light

G0075 gscroll input vector the wrong size

G0076 Call Aptech Systems Technical Support

G0077 New size cannot be zero

You cannot **reshape** a matrix to a size of zero.

G0078 vargetl outside of procedure

G0079 varputl outside of procedure

G0080 File handle must be an integer

G0081 Error renaming file

G0082 Error reading file

G0083 Error creating temporary file

G0084 Too many locals

A procedure has too many local variables.

G0085 Invalid file type

You cannot use this kind of file in this way.

G0086 Error deleting file**G0087 Couldn't open**

The auxiliary output file could not be opened. Check the file name and make sure there is room on the disk.

G0088 Not enough memory to convert the whole string**G0089 WARNING: duplicate definition of local****G0090 Label undefined**

Label referenced has no definition.

G0091 Symbol too long

Symbols can be no longer than 32 characters.

G0092 Open comment

A comment was never closed.

G0093 Locate off screen**G0094 Argument out of range****G0095 Seed out of range****G0096 Error parsing string**

parse encountered a token that was too long.

G0097 String not closed

A string must have double quotes at both ends.

G0098 Invalid character for imaginary part of complex number

G0099 Illegal redefinition of user keyword

G0100 Internal E R R O R ###

Notify Aptech Systems.

G0101 Argument cannot be zero

The argument to **ln** or **log** cannot be zero.

G0102 Subroutine calls too deep

Too many levels of **gosub**. Restructure your program.

G0103 return without gosub

You have encountered a subroutine without executing a **gosub**.

G0104 Argument must be positive

G0105 Bad expression or missing arguments

Check the expression in question, or you forgot an argument.

G0106 Factorial overflow

G0107 Nesting too deep

Break the expression into smaller statements.

G0108 Missing left bracket [

G0109 Not enough data items

You omitted data in a **let** statement.

G0110 Found) expected] -**G0111 Found] expected) -****G0112 Matrix multiplication overflow****G0113 Unclosed (****G0114 Unclosed [****G0115 Illegal redefinition of function**

You are attempting to turn a function into a matrix or string. If this is a name conflict, **delete** the function.

G0116 sysstate: invalid case**G0117 Invalid argument****G0118 Argument must be integer**

File handles must be integral.

G0120 Illegal type for save**G0121 Matrix not positive definite**

The matrix is either not positive definite, or singular using the current tolerance.

G0122 Bad file handle

The file handle does not refer to an open file or is not in the valid range for file handles.

G0123 File handle not open

The file handle does not refer to an open file.

G0124 readr call too large

You are attempting to read too much in one call.

G0125 Read past end of file

You have already reached the end of the file.

G0126 Error closing file**G0127 File not open for write****G0128 File already open****G0129 File not open for read****G0130 No output variables specified****G0131 Can't create file, too many variables****G0132 Can't write, disk probably full****G0133 Function too long****G0134 Can't seekr in this type of file****G0135 Can't seek to negative row****G0136 Too many arguments or misplaced assignment operator**

You have an assignment operator (=) where you want a comparison operator (==), or you have too many arguments.

G0137 Negative argument - erf or erfc

G0138 User keyword must have one argument

G0139 Negative parameter - Incomplete Beta

G0140 Invalid second parameter - Incomplete Beta

G0141 Invalid third parameter - Incomplete Beta

G0142 Nonpositive parameter - gamma

G0143 NaN or missing value - cdfchic

G0144 Negative parameter - cdfchic

G0145 Second parameter < 1.0 - cdfchic

G0146 Parameter too large - Incomplete Beta

G0147 Bad argument to trig function

G0148 Angle too large to trig function

G0149 Matrices not conformable

For a description of the function or operator being used and conformability rules, see MATRIX OPERATORS, Section 7.2, or the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.

G0150 Matrix not square

G0151 Sort failure

G0152 Variable not initialized

You have referenced a variable that has not been initialized to any value.

G0153 Unsuccessful close on auxiliary output

The disk may be full.

G0154 Illegal redefinition of string

G0155 Nested procedure definition

A **proc** statement was encountered inside a procedure definition.

G0156 Illegal redefinition of procedure

You are attempting to turn a procedure into a matrix or string. If this is a name conflict, delete the procedure.

G0157 Illegal redefinition of matrix

G0158 endp without proc

You are attempting to end a procedure that you never started.

G0159 Wrong number of parameters

You called a procedure with the wrong number of arguments.

G0160 Expected string variable

G0161 User keywords return nothing

G0162 Can't save proc/keyword/fn with global references

Remove the global references or leave this in source code form for the autoloader to handle. (See **library** in the GAUSS LANGUAGE REFERENCE.)

G0163 Wrong size format matrix

G0164 Bad mask matrix

G0165 Type mismatch or missing arguments

G0166 Character element too long

The maximum length for character elements is 8 characters.

G0167 Argument must be column vector

G0168 Wrong number of returns

The procedure was defined to return a different number of items.

G0169 Invalid pointer

You are attempting to call a local procedure using an invalid procedure pointer.

G0170 Invalid use of ampersand

G0171 Called symbol is wrong type

You are attempting to call a local procedure using a pointer to something else.

G0172 Can't resize temporary file

G0173 varindx failed during open

The global symbol table is full.

G0174 ‘.’ and ‘ ’ operators must be inside [] brackets

These operators are for indexing matrices.

G0175 String too long to compare

G0176 Argument out of range

G0177 Invalid format string

G0178 Invalid mode for getf

G0179 Insufficient heap space

G0180 Trim too much

You are attempting to trim more rows than the matrix has.

G0181 Illegal assignment - type mismatch

G0182 2nd and 3rd arguments different order

G0274 Invalid parameter for conv

G0275 Parameter is NaN (Not A Number)

The argument is a NaN (see SPECIAL DATA TYPES, Section [6.6.9](#)).

G0276 Illegal use of reserved word

G0277 Null string illegal here

G0278 proc without endp

You must terminate a procedure definition with an **endp** statement.

G0286 Multiple assign out of memory

G0287 Seed not updated

The seed argument to **rndns** and **rndus** must be a simple local or global variable reference. It cannot be an expression or constant. These functions are obsolete, please use **rndlcu** and **rndlcu**

G0288 Found break not in do loop

G0289 Found continue not in do loop

G0290 Library not found

The specified library cannot be found on the **lib_path** path. Make sure installation was correct.

G0291 Compiler pass out of memory

Notify Aptech Systems.

G0292 File listed in library not found

A file listed in a library could not be opened.

G0293 Procedure has no definition

The procedure was not initialized. Define it.

G0294 Error opening temporary file

One of the temporary files could not be opened. The directory may be full.

G0295 Error writing temporary file

One of the temporary files could not be written to. The disk may be full.

G0296 Can't raise negative number to nonintegral power

G0300 File handle must be a scalar

G0301 Syntax error in library

G0302 File has been truncated or corrupted

getname	File header cannot be read.
load	Cannot read input file, or file header cannot be read.
open	File size does not match header specifications, or file header cannot be read.

G0317 Can't open temp file

G0336 Disk full

G0339 Can't debug compiled program

G0341 File too big

G0347 Can't allocate that many globals

G0351 Warning: Not reinitializing : declare ?=

The symbol is already initialized. It will be left as is.

G0352 Warning: Reinitializing : declare !=

The symbol is already initialized. It will be reset.

G0355 Wrong size line matrix

G0360 Write error

G0364 Paging error

G0365 Unsupported executable file type

G0368 Unable to allocate translation space

G0369 Unable to allocate buffer

G0370 Syntax Error in code statement

G0371 Syntax Error in recode statement

G0372 Token verify error

Notify Aptech Systems.

G0373 Procedure definition not allowed

A procedure name appears on the left side of an assignment operator.

G0374 Invalid make statement

G0375 make Variable is a Number

G0376 make Variable is Procedure

G0377 Cannot make Existing Variable

G0378 Cannot make External Variable

G0379 Cannot make String Constant

G0380 Invalid vector statement

G0381 vector Variable is a Number

G0382 vector Variable is Procedure

G0383 Cannot vector Existing Variable

G0384 Cannot vector External Variable

G0385 Cannot vector String Constant

G0386 Invalid extern statement

G0387 Cannot extern number

G0388 Procedures always external

A procedure name has been declared in an **extern** statement. This is a warning only.

G0389 extern variable already local

A variable declared in an **extern** statement has already been assigned local status.

G0390 String constant cannot be external

G0391 Invalid code statement

G0392 code Variable is a Number

G0393 code Variable is Procedure

G0394 Cannot code Existing Variable

G0395 Cannot code External Variable

G0396 Cannot code String Constant

G0397 Invalid recode statement

G0398 recode Variable is a Number

G0399 recode Variable is Procedure

G0400 Cannot recode External Variable

G0401 Cannot recode String Constant

G0402 Invalid keep statement

G0403 Invalid drop statement

G0404 Cannot define Number

G0405 Cannot define String

G0406 Invalid select statement

G0407 Invalid delete statement

G0408 Invalid outtyp statement

G0409 outtyp already defaulted to 8

Character data has been found in the output data set before an **outtyp 2** or **outtyp 4** statement. This is a warning only.

G0410 outtyp must equal 2, 4, or 8

G0411 outtyp override...precision set to 8

Character data has been found in the output data set after an **outtyp 2** or **outtyp 4** statement. This is a warning only.

G0412 default not allowed in recode statement

`default` allowed only in `code` statement.

G0413 Missing file name in dataloop statement

G0414 Invalid listwise statement

G0415 Invalid lag statement

G0416 lag variable is a number

G0417 lag variable is a procedure

G0418 Cannot lag External Variable

G0419 Cannot lag String Constant

G0421 Command not supported in Run-Time Module

G0428 Cannot use debug command inside program

G0429 Invalid number of subdiagonals

G0431 Error closing dynamic library

G0432 Error opening dynamic library

G0433 Cannot find DLL function

G0434 Error opening default dynamic library

G0435 Invalid mode

G0436 Matrix is empty

G0437 loadexe not supported; use dlibrary instead

G0438 callexe not supported; use dllcall instead

G0439 File has wrong bit order

G0440 File has wrong byte order

G0441 Type vector malloc failed

G0442 No type vector in gfblock

G0445 Illegal left-hand side reference in procedure

G0446 Argument is the wrong size

G0447 vfor called with illegal loop level

G0454 Failure opening printer for output

G0456 Failure buffering output for printer

G0457 Cannot take log of a negative number

G0458 Attempt to index proc/fn/keyword as a matrix

G0459 Missing right brace

G0460 Unexpected end of statement

G0461 Too many data items

G0462 Negative trim value

G0463 Failure generating graph

G0465 Redefinition of structure, number of elements

G0466 Redefinition of structure, type mismatch

G0467 Redefinition of structure, unrecognized member

G0468 Structure definition inside procedure definition

G0469 Cannot create translator temp file

G0470 Symbol not found

G0472 Invalid name

G0473 String not terminated with null byte

G0477 FOR loops nested too deep

G0486 Character argument too long

G0487 License expired

G0490 License manager initialization error

G0491 License manager error

G0492 Licensing failure

G0497 Missing right parenthesis

G0500 Cannot create temporary filename

G0503 Cannot assign matrix to scalar member

G0504 Invalid structure member

G0505 Invalid structure redefinition

G0506 Structure assignment mismatch

G0507 Undefined structure

G0508 Structure argument mismatch

G0509 Too many structure members

G0510 Duplicate name for structure member

G0514 Not supported for structures

G0515 Too many values in locator

G0516 Too many dimensions in result

G0517 Too many dimensions in argument

G0518 Not implemented for complex

G0519 Illegal dereference of structure array

G0520 Arguments not conformable

G0521 Argument must be real

G0522 Illegal indexing of dereferenced structure

G0523 Numeric argument must be integer

G0524 Found comma, expecting index

G0525 Argument contains NaNs

G0526 Argument must be compact format

G0529 Array orders must be ≥ 1

G0531 Two trailing dimensions of argument must be the same size

G0532 Both dimensions of argument must be the same size

G0533 1-dimensional argument must contain only 1 element

G0534 Cannot create file

G0538 Zero illegal in for loop increment

G0541 Illegal assignment to FOR loop counter

G0542 Object too large for 32-bit version

G0543 Array has too many dimensions for matrix assign

G0547 Array not conformable for indexing

G0548 Array not conformable for boolean operation

G0549 Global structure pointer cannot point to local structure

G0550 Invalid use of *

G0551 Feature not authorized

G0553 Path too long

G0554 Unable to create sparse matrix

G0555 Cannot index uninitialized structure

G0556 #IF nesting limit exceeded

G0557 #ELSE without #IF

G0558 #ENDIF without #IF

G0559 Symbol not #DEFINE'd

G0560 Too many #DEFINE's

G0561 Duplicate #DEFINE

G0562 Open /* */ comment

G0563 Open @ @ comment

G0564 Illegal redefinition of sparse matrix

G0565 Initializer too large, increase maxdecret in config (.cfg) file

G0566 Can't create profiler data file

G0567 Sparse matrix uninitialized

G0568 Operation not defined for triangular, symmetric, or Hermitian sparse matrix

G0569 Argument must be complex

G0570 Diagonal must be real

G0571 Diagonal must not contain zeros

G0572 Argument must be triangular

G0573 Argument must be symmetric

G0574 Sparse type mismatch

G0575 Unable to load variable

G0576 Threading error

G0577 Expected THREADSTAT, THREADBEGIN, or THREADJOIN

G0578 A THREADJOIN failed

G0579 Cannot call RUN from inside thread

G0580 Unable to converge in allowed number of iterations

G0581 Incorrect Argument: Number of eigenvalues must be positive

G0582 Incorrect Argument: Number of column vectors must be \geq number of eigenvalues +2 and $<$ rows of input matrix

G0583 Could not apply shift during an Arnoldi iteration cycle. Try increasing size of ncv

G0584 Invalid Input: 'which' must be 'LM' 'SM' 'LR' 'LI' 'SR' or 'SI' and type string

G0585 Error Return from LAPACK eigenvalue calculation

G0586 dneupd error 1: contact Aptech Systems

G0587 Input matrix must be sparse

G0588 Incorrect Input: Number of eigenvalues must be scalar

G0589 Incorrect Input: Tolerance must be scalar

G0590 No eigenvalues found to specified tolerance in allowed iterations

G0591 Incorrect Input: Max iterations must be scalar

G0592 Incorrect Input: Number of column vectors must be scalar

G0593 Incorrect Input: Third input, probability, must be > 0 and < 1

G0594 Incorrect Input: Number of successes (input 1) must be less than number of trials (input 2)

G0595 Incorrect Input: State vector cannot have more than 1 column

G0596 Incorrect Input: Inputs 1 and 2 (cols and rows) must be scalar or 1x1 matrix

G0597 Incorrect Input: Input must be dense matrix

G0598 Incorrect Input: First input may have 1 column only

G0599 Incorrect Input: Input 2 may not have more columns than input 1 has rows

G0600 Incorrect Input: Input 1 must be square

G0601 Incorrect Input: Input 2 must be square

G0602 Incorrect Input: $1 \leq il < iu$ and $iu \leq \text{rows of } x$

G0603 Failure to converge

Maximizing Performance 26

These hints will help you maximize the performance of your new **GAUSS** System.

26.1 Library System

Some temporary files are created during the autoloading process. If you have a **tmp_path** configuration variable or a **tmp** environment string that defines a path on a RAM disk, the temporary files will be placed on the RAM disk.

For example:

```
set tmp=f:\tmp
```

tmp_path takes precedence over the **tmp** environment variable.

A disk cache will also help, as well as having your frequently used files in the first path in the **src_path**.

You can optimize your library .lcn files by putting the correct drive and path on each file name listed in the library. The **lib** command will do this for you.

Use the **compile** command to precompile your large frequently used programs. This will completely eliminate compile time when the programs are rerun.

26.2 Loops

The use of the built-in matrix operators and functions rather than **do** loops will ensure that you are utilizing the potential of **GAUSS**.

Here is an example:

Given the vector **x** with 8000 normal random numbers,

```
x = rndn(8000,1);
```

you could get a count of the elements with an absolute value greater than 1 with a **do** loop, like this:

```
c = 0;
i = 1;
do while i <= rows(x);
    if abs(x[i]) > 1;
        c = c+1;
    endif;
    i = i+1;
endo;
print c;
```

Or, you could use:

```
c = sumc(abs(x) .> 1);
print c;
```

The **do** loop takes over 40 times longer.

26.3 Memory Usage

Computers today can have large amounts of RAM. This doesn't mean that large data sets should be read entirely into memory. Many **GAUSS** procedures and applications are written to allow for data sets to be read in sections rather than all at once. Even if you have enough RAM to store the data set completely, you should consider taking advantage of this feature. The speed-ups using this feature can be significant. For example, **ols** is called using a data set stored in a matrix versus stored on the disk in a **GAUSS** data set. The computer is a 2.8 Megahertz computer with Windows XP.

```
y = rndn(250000,1);
x = rndn(250000,100);
xlbl = 0$+"X"+ftocv(seqa(1,1,100),1,0);
lbl = "Y" | xlbl;
call saved(y~x,"test",lbl);
```

```
__output = 0;
t0 = date;
call ols("",y,x);
t1 = date;
t2 = date;
call ols("test","Y",xlabel);
t3 = date;
print ethsec(t2,t3)/100 " seconds;
print;
print ethsec(t0,t1)/100 " seconds";
```

```
25.750000 seconds
9.6720000 seconds
```

This represents more than a 50% speedup by leaving the data on the disk.

maxvec,maxbytes

maxvec is a **GAUSS** procedure that returns the value of the global variable **__maxvec** that determines the amount of data to be read in at a time from a **GAUSS** data set. This value can be modified for a particular run by setting **__maxvec** in your command file to some other value. The value returned by a call to **maxvec** can be permanently modified by editing **system.dec** and changing the value of **__maxvec**. The value returned when running **GAUSS Light** is always 8192.

maxbytes is a **GAUSS** procedure that returns the value of a scalar global **__maxbytes** that sets the amount of available RAM. This value can be modified for a particular run by setting **__maxbytes** in your command file to some other value. The value returned by a call to **maxbytes** can be permanently modified by editing **system.dec** and changing the value of **__maxbytes**.

If you wish to force **GAUSS** procedures and applications to read a **GAUSS** data set in its entirety, set **__maxvec** and **__maxbytes** to very large values.

26.3.1 Hard Disk Maintenance

The hard disk used for the swap file should be optimized occasionally with a disk optimizer. Use a disk maintenance program to ensure that the disk media is in good shape.

26.3.2 CPU Cache

There is a line for cache size in the **gauss.cfg** file. Set it to the size of the CPU data cache for your computer.

This affects the choice of algorithms used for matrix multiply functions.

This will not change the results you get, but it can radically affect performance for large matrices.

Fonts A

There are four fonts available in the **Publication Quality Graphics** System:

Simplex	standard sans serif font
Simgrma	Simplex greek, math
Microb	bold and boxy
complex	standard font with serif

The following tables show the characters available in each font and their ASCII values. (For details on selecting fonts for your graph, see **SELECTING FONTS**, Section [21.4.1](#).)

A.1 Simplex

33	!	61	=	89	Y	117	u
34	"	62	>	90	Z	118	v
35	#	63	?	91	[	119	w
36	\$	64	@	92	\	120	x
37	%	65	A	93	]	121	y
38	&	66	B	94	^	122	z
39	'	67	C	95	_	123	{
40	(	68	D	96	'	124	|
41	)	69	E	97	a	125	}
42	*	70	F	98	b	126	~
43	+	71	G	99	c		
44	,	72	H	100	d		
45	-	73	I	101	e		
46	.	74	J	102	f		
47	/	75	K	103	g		
48	0	76	L	104	h		
49	1	77	M	105	i		
50	2	78	N	106	j		
51	3	79	O	107	k		
52	4	80	P	108	l		
53	5	81	Q	109	m		
54	6	82	R	110	n		
55	7	83	S	111	o		
56	8	84	T	112	p		
57	9	85	U	113	q		
58	:	86	V	114	r		
59	;	87	W	115	s		
60	<	88	X	116	t		

A.2 Simgrma

33	ϵ	61	\neq	89	ψ	117	ν
34	$($	62	\geq	90	\approx	118	$)$
35	\equiv	63	\simeq	91	$[$	119	ω
36	\approx	64	\cup	92	∂	120	ξ
37	\uparrow	65	$\frac{1}{2}$	93	$]$	121	ψ
38	$\sqrt{}$	66	$\frac{1}{3}$	94	\cap	122	ζ
39	\prime	67	H	95	\downarrow	123	$\}$
40	\subset	68	Δ	96	\sim	124	\int
41	\supset	69	$\frac{1}{8}$	97	α	125	$\}$
42	\times	70	Φ	98	β	126	∞
43	\pm	71	Γ	99	η		
44	\int	72	X	100	δ		
45	\mp	73	$\frac{2}{3}$	101	ε		
46	\cdot	74	\perp	102	φ		
47	\div	75	$\frac{3}{8}$	103	γ		
48	∇	76	\wedge	104	χ		
49	$\sqrt{}$	77	$\frac{5}{8}$	105	ι		
50	ϕ	78	$\frac{7}{8}$	106	t		
51	$<$	79	$\frac{1}{4}$	107	κ		
52	$>$	80	Π	108	λ		
53	$/$	81	Θ	109	μ		
54	\exists	82	P	110	ν		
55	\parallel	83	Σ	111	o		
56	∞	84	\lesssim	112	π		
57	\odot	85	Υ	113	ϑ		
58	\rightarrow	86	\leftrightarrow	114	ρ		
59	\leftarrow	87	Ω	115	σ		
60	\cong	88	Ξ	116	τ		

A.3 Microb

33	!	61	=	89	Y	117	u
34	"	62	>	90	Z	118	v
35	#	63	?	91	[	119	w
36	\$	64	@	92	\	120	x
37	%	65	A	93	]	121	y
38	&	66	B	94	^	122	z
39	'	67	C	95	_	123	{
40	[	68	D	96	`	124	|
41	]	69	E	97	a	125	}
42	*	70	F	98	b	126	~
43	+	71	G	99	c		
44	,	72	H	100	d		
45	-	73	I	101	e		
46	.	74	J	102	f		
47	/	75	K	103	g		
48	0	76	L	104	h		
49	1	77	M	105	i		
50	2	78	N	106	j		
51	3	79	O	107	k		
52	4	80	P	108	l		
53	5	81	Q	109	m		
54	6	82	R	110	n		
55	7	83	S	111	o		
56	8	84	T	112	p		
57	9	85	U	113	q		
58	:	86	V	114	r		
59	;	87	W	115	s		
60	<	88	X	116	t		

A.4 Complex

33	!	61	=	89	Y	117	u
34	"	62	>	90	Z	118	v
35	#	63	?	91	[	119	w
36	\$	64	@	92	\	120	x
37	%	65	A	93	]	121	y
38	&	66	B	94	^	122	z
39	'	67	C	95	_	123	{
40	(	68	D	96	`	124	|
41	)	69	E	97	a	125	}
42	*	70	F	98	b	126	~
43	+	71	G	99	c		
44	,	72	H	100	d		
45	-	73	I	101	e		
46	.	74	J	102	f		
47	/	75	K	103	g		
48	0	76	L	104	h		
49	1	77	M	105	i		
50	2	78	N	106	j		
51	3	79	O	107	k		
52	4	80	P	108	l		
53	5	81	Q	109	m		
54	6	82	R	110	n		
55	7	83	S	111	o		
56	8	84	T	112	p		
57	9	85	U	113	q		
58	:	86	V	114	r		
59	;	87	W	115	s		
60	<	88	X	116	t		

Reserved Words Appendix B

The following words are used for **GAUSS** functions. You cannot use these names for variables or procedures in your programs:

A

abs	AmericanBSCall
acf	AmericanBSCall_Greeks
concat	AmericanBSCall_ImpVol
acos	AmericanBSPut
aye	AmericanBSPut_Greeks
amax	AmericanBSPut_ImpVol
amean	amin
AmericanBinomCall	amult
AmericanBinomCall_Greeks	and
AmericanBinomCall_ImpVol	annualTradingDays
AmericanBinomPut	arccos
AmericanBinomPut_Greeks	arcsin
AmericanBinomPut_ImpVol	arctan

arctan2
areshape
arrayalloc
arrayindex
arrayinit
arraytomat
asclabel

asin
asum
atan
atan2
atranspose
axmargin

B

balance
band
bandchol
bandcholsol
bandltsol
bandrv
bandsolpd
bar

base10
begwind
besselj
bessely
box
boxcox
break

C

calcbox
call
callexe
cdfbeta
cdfbvn
cdfbvn2
cdfbvn2e
cdfchic
cdfchii
cdfchinc
cdffc
cdffnc
cdfgam
cdfmvn

cdfn
cdfn2
cdfnc
cdfni
cdftc
cdftci
cdftnc
cdftvn
cdir
ceil
cfft
cfft_i
changedir
chdir

checkinterrupt	cons
chol	continue
choldn	contour
cholsol	conv
cholup	convertsatostr
chrs	convertstrtosa
cint	coreleft
clear	corrmm
clearg	corrms
close	corrvc
closeall	corrxx
cls	corrxs
cmsplit	cos
cmsplit2	cosh
code	counts
color	countwts
cols	create
colsf	crossprd
combinate	crout
combined	croutp
comlog	csrcol
commandeerm	csrlin
commandeersa	csrtype
compile	cumprodc
complex	cumsumc
con	curve
cond	cvtos
conformed	cvtosa
conj	

D

datacreate	dataopen
datacreatecomplex	datasave
datalist	date
dataload	datestr

datestring	dotfge
datestrymd	dotfgemt
dayinyr	dotfgt
dayOfWeek	dotfgtmt
debug	dotfle
declare	dotflemt
delete	dotflt
deletefile	dotflmt
delif	dotfne
denseSubmat	dotfnemt
design	draw
det	dsCreate
detl	dstat
dfft	dstatmt
dffti	dstatmtControlCreate
dfree	dtdate
diag	dtday
diagrv	dttime
digamma	dttodtv
disable	dttostr
dlibrary	dttoutc
dllcall	dtvnormal
do	dtvtodt
dos	dtvtoutc
doswincloseall	dummy
doswinopen	dummybr
dotfeq	dummydn
dotfeqmt	

E

ed	eigcg2
edit	eigch
editm	eigch2
eig	eigh
eigcg	eighv

eigrg
 eigrg2
 eigrs
 eigrs2
 eigv
 elapsedTradingDays
 else
 elseif
 enable
 end
 endfor
 endif
 endo
 endp
 endwind
 envget
 eof
 eq
 eqSolve
 eqSolvemt
 eqSolvemtControlCreate
 eqSolvemtOutCreate
 eqSolveSet
 eqv
 erf

erfc
 error
 errorlog
 etdays
 ethsec
 etstr
 EuropeanBinomCall
 EuropeanBinomCall_Greeks
 EuropeanBinomCall_ImpVol
 EuropeanBinomPut
 EuropeanBinomPut_Greeks
 EuropeanBinomPut_ImpVol
 EuropeanBSCall
 EuropeanBSCall_Greeks
 EuropeanBSCall_ImpVol
 EuropeanBSPut
 EuropeanBSPut_Greeks
 EuropeanBSPut_ImpVol
 exctsmpl
 exec
 execbg
 exp
 expr
 external
 eye

F

fcheckerr
 fclearerr
 feq
 feqmt
 fflush
 fft
 ffti
 fftm

fftmi
 fftn
 fge
 fgemt
 fgets
 fgetsa
 fgetsat
 fgetst

fgt	fonts
fgtmt	fontunload
fileinfo	fontunloadall
files	fopen
filesa	for
fix	format
fle	formatcv
flemt	formatnv
floor	fputs
flt	fputst
fltml	fseek
fmod	fstrerror
fn	ftell
fne	ftocv
fnemt	ftos
font	ftostrc
fontload	

G

gamma	gdaread
gammaii	gdareadbyindex
gausset	gdareadsome
gdaappend	gdareportvarinfo
gdacreate	gdaupdate
gdadstat	gdaupdateandpack
gdadstatmat	gdawrite
gdagetindex	gdawritesome
gdagetname	gdtfastcat
gdagetnames	ge
gdagetorders	getarray
gdagetype	getdims
gdagetypes	getf
gdagetvarinfo	getmatrix
gdaiscplx	getmatrix4d
gdapack	getname

getnamef
getNextTradingDay
getNextWeekDay
getnr
getnrmt
getorders
getpath
getPreviousTradingDay
getPreviousWeekDay
getscalar3d
getscalar4d
getwind

gosub
goto
gradMT
gradMTm
gradp
graph
graphgpg
graphinit
graphprt
graphset
graphsev3
gt

H

hardcopy
hasimag
header
headermt
hess
hessMT
hessMTg
hessMTgw

hessMTm
hessMTmw
hessMTw
hessp
hist
histf
histp
hsec

Reserved
Words

I

if
imag
indcv
indexcat
indices
indices2
indicesf
indicesfn

indnv
indsav
int
intgrat2
intgrat3
inthp
intHP1
intHP2

intHP3	intsimp
intHP4	inv
inthpControlCreate	invpd
intquad1	invswp
intquad2	iscplx
intquad3	iscplxsf
intrleav	isinfnanmiss
intrleavsa	issmiss
intrsect	isSparse
intrsectsa	

K

key	keyw
keyav	keyword
keymatchmc	

L

lag	lapsvds
lag1	lapsvdusv
lagn	le
lapeighb	let
lapeighi	lib
lapeighvb	library
lapeighvi	license_id
lapgeig	line
lapgeigh	linsolve
lapgeighv	ln
lapgeigv	lncdfbvn
lapgschur	lncdfbvn2
lapgsvdcst	lncdfmvn
lapgsvds	lncdfn
lapgsvdst	lncdfn2
lapsvdcusv	lncdfnc

lnfact	loess
lngamma	loessmt
lnpdfmvn	loessmtControlCreate
lnpdfmvt	log
lnpdfn	loglog
lnpdft	logx
load	logy
loadarray	loopnextindex
loadd	lower
loadexe	lowmat
loadf	lowmat1
loadk	lpos
loadm	lprint
loadp	lpwidth
loads	lshow
loadstruct	lt
loadwind	ltrisol
local	lu
locate	lusol

M

machEpsilon	mbesselei1
makevars	mbesseli
makewind	mbesseli0
margin	mbesseli1
matalloc	meanc
matinit	median
matrix	mergeby
mattoarray	mergebysa
maxbytes	mergevar
maxc	minc
maxindc	minindc
maxvec	miss
mbesselei	missex
mbesselei0	missrv

moment
momentd
movingave

movingaveExpwgt
movingaveWgt
msym

N

nametype
ndpchk
ndpclex
ndpcntrl
ne
new
nextindex

nextn
nextnevn
nextwind
not
null
null1
numCombinations

O

oldfft
oldffti
ols
olsmt
olsmtControlCreate
olsqr
olsqr2
olsqrmt
ones

open
openpqg
optn
optnevn
or
orth
output
outwidth

P

pacf
packr
parse
pause
pdfn

pi
pinv
pinvmt
plot
plotsym

polar	putarray
polychar	putf
polyeval	pvCreate
polyint	pvgetIndex
polymake	pvgetparnames
polymat	pvgetparvector
polymroot	pvLength
polymult	pvList
polyroot	pvnumoffsets
pop	pvoffsets
pqgwin	pvPack
prcsn	pvPacki
previousindex	pvPackm
princomp	pvPackmi
print	pvPacks
printdos	pvPacksi
printfm	pvPacksm
printfmt	pvPacksmi
proc	pvputparvector
prodc	pvtest
push	pvunpack

Q

QNewton	qre
QNewtonmt	qrep
QNewtonmtControlCreate	qrsol
QNewtonmtOutCreate	qrtsol
qnewtonset	qtyr
QProg	qtyre
QProgmt	qtyrep
qprogMTInCreate	quantile
qqr	quantiled
qqre	quantilem
qqrep	quantilemd
qr	qyr

qyre

qyrep

R

rank
rankindx
readr
real
recode
recserar
recsercp
recserrc
register_off
register_on
register_reset
register_show
renamefile
replay
rerun
reshape
retp
return
rev
rfft
rffti
rfftip
rfftn
rfftnp
rfftp
rndbeta
rndcon
rndgam
rndi
rndKMbeta
rndKMgam

rndkmi
rndkmm
rndKMnb
rndKMp
rndkmu
rndKMvm
rndLCbeta
rndLCgam
rndlci
rndlcn
rndLCnb
rndLCp
rndlcu
rndLCvm
rndmod
rndmult
rndn
rndnb
rndns
rndp
rndseed
rndu
rndus
rndvm
rotater
round
rows
rowsf
rref
run

S

satocv	sinh
satostrC	sleep
save	solpd
saveall	sortc
saved	sortcc
savestruct	sortd
savewind	sorthc
scale	sorthcc
scale3d	sortind
scalerr	sortindc
scalinfnanmiss	sortindmc
scalmiss	sortmc
schtoc	sortr
schur	sortrc
screen	sparseCols
scroll	sparseEye
searchsourcepath	sparseFD
seekr	sparseFP
selif	sparseHConcat
seqa	sparseNZE
seqm	sparseOnes
setarray	sparseRows
setcnvrt	sparseScale
setdif	sparseSet
setdifsa	sparseSolve
setvars	sparseSubmat
setvmode	sparseTD
setvwrmode	sparseTranspose
setwind	sparseTrTD
shell	sparseTscalar
shiftr	sparseVConcat
show	spline
showpqg	spline1D
sin	spline2D
singleindex	sqpmt_feasible

sqpmt_meritFunct	strtofcplx
sqpSolve	strtriml
SQPsolveMT	strtrimr
sqpSolveMTcontrolCreate	strtrunc
sqpSolveMTlagrangeCreate	strtrunc1
sqpSolveMToutCreate	strtruncpad
sqpSolveset	strtruncr
sqrt	struct
stdc	submat
stocv	subscat
stof	substute
stop	subvec
strcombine	sumc
strindx	sumr
string	surface
strlen	svd
strput	svd1
strrindx	svd2
strsect	svdcusv
strsplit	svds
strsplitpad	svdusv
strtodt	sysstate
strtodtd	system
strtof	

T

tab	timedt
tan	timestr
tanh	timeutc
tempname	title
ThreadBegin	tkf2eps
ThreadEnd	tkf2ps
ThreadJoin	tkf2ps_margin
ThreadStat	tocart
time	todaydt

toeplitz
token
topolar
trace
trap
trapchk
trigamma

trim
trimr
trunc
type
typecv
typef

U

union
unionsa
uniqindmc
uniqindx
uniqindxsa
unique
uniquemc
uniquesa

until
upmat
upmat1
upper
use
utctodt
utctodtv
utrisol

V

vals
varget
vargetl
varmall
varmares
varput
varputl
vartype
vartypef
vcm
vcms
vcx
vcxs

vec
vech
vecr
vfor
vget
view
viewxyz
vlist
vnamecv
volume
vput
vread
vtypecv

W

<code>wait</code>	<code>winpan</code>
<code>waitc</code>	<code>winprint</code>
<code>walkindex</code>	<code>winprintpgg</code>
<code>while</code>	<code>winrefresh</code>
<code>winclear</code>	<code>winrefresharea</code>
<code>wincleararea</code>	<code>winresize</code>
<code>winclearttylog</code>	<code>winsetactive</code>
<code>winclose</code>	<code>winsetbackground</code>
<code>wincloseall</code>	<code>winsetcolor</code>
<code>winconvertpgg</code>	<code>winsetcolorcells</code>
<code>window</code>	<code>winsetcolormap</code>
<code>wingetactive</code>	<code>winsetcursor</code>
<code>wingetattributes</code>	<code>winsetforeground</code>
<code>wingetcolorcells</code>	<code>winsetrefresh</code>
<code>wingetcursor</code>	<code>winsettextwrap</code>
<code>winmove</code>	<code>winwrite</code>
<code>winopenpgg</code>	<code>winzoompgg</code>
<code>winopentext</code>	<code>writer</code>
<code>winopentty</code>	

X

<code>x_indcv</code>	<code>xtics</code>
<code>xlabel</code>	<code>xy</code>
<code>xor</code>	<code>xyz</code>
<code>xpnd</code>	

Y

<code>ylabel</code>	<code>ytics</code>
---------------------	--------------------

Z

zeros
zlabel

ztics

**Reserved
Words**

Singularity Tolerance Appendix C

The tolerance used to determine whether or not a matrix is singular can be changed. The default value is 1.0e-14 for both the LU and the Cholesky decompositions. The tolerance for each decomposition can be changed separately. The following operators are affected by a change in the tolerance:

Crout LU Decomposition

`crout(x)`
`croutp(x)`
`inv(x)`
`det(x)`
`y/x` when neither x nor y is scalar and x is square.

Cholesky Decomposition

`chol(x)`
`invpd(x)`
`solpd(y,x)`
`y/x` when neither x nor y is scalar and x is not square.

C.1 Reading and Setting the Tolerance

The tolerance value may be read or set using the **sysstate** function, cases 13 and 14.

C.2 Determining Singularity

There is no perfect tolerance for determining singularity. The default is 1.0e-14. You can adjust this as necessary.

A numerically better method of determining singularity is to use **cond** to determine the condition number of the matrix. If the equation

$$1 / \text{cond}(\mathbf{x}) + 1 \text{ eq } 1$$

is true, then the matrix is usually considered singular to machine precision. (See LAPACK for a detailed discussion on the relationship between the matrix condition and the number of significant figures of accuracy to be expected in the result.)

Index

- / , 7-8
- ./ , 7-8
- ~ , 7-9
- | , 7-8
- ! , 7-6
- *~ , 7-7
- * , 7-5
- . * , 7-6
- . *. , 7-6
- + , 7-4
- , 7-4
- / , 7-5
- ./ , 7-6
- % , 7-5
- ^ , 7-6, 7-19
- . ^ , 7-6
- , (comma) , 7-16
- . (dot) , 7-16
- : (colon) , 7-17
- ; (semicolon) , 6-2
- # , 19-3, 29-137, 29-546, 29-720, 29-956
- \$, 29-137, 29-546, 29-720, 29-956
- ~ , 7-19
- \$| , 7-18
- \$+ , 7-17
- & , 7-17, 8-10
- = , 6-2, 6-12, 6-39
- = , 7-15
- / = , 7-11
- ./ = , 7-12
- == , 6-40, 7-10
- . == , 7-12
- > , 7-11
- . > , 7-12
- > = , 7-11
- . > = , 7-12
- < , 7-10
- . < , 7-11
- < = , 7-10
- . < = , 7-12
- __altnam, 29-259
- __output, 29-259, 29-535, 29-847
- __title, 29-259
- __Tol, 29-259
- _eqs_IterInfo, 29-259
- _eqs_JacobianProc, 29-259
- _eqs_MaxIters, 29-259
- _eqs_StepTol, 29-259
- _eqs_TypicalF, 29-259
- _eqs_TypicalX, 29-259
- _loess_Degree, 29-535
- _loess_NumEval, 29-535
- _loess_Span, 29-535

_loess_WgtType, 29-535
_sqp_A, 29-845
_sqp_B, 29-845
_sqp_Bounds, 29-846
_sqp_C, 29-845
_sqp_D, 29-845
_sqp_DirTol, 29-847
_sqp_EqProc, 29-845
_sqp_FeasibleTest, 29-847
_sqp_GradProc, 29-846
_sqp_HessProc, 29-847
_sqp_IneqProc, 29-846
_sqp_MaxIters, 29-847
_sqp_ParNames, 29-847
_sqp_PrintIters, 29-847
_sqp_RandRadius, 29-847

A

abs, 29-1
absolute value, 29-1
acf, 29-2
aconcat, 11-4, 29-3
additive sequence, 29-794
aeye, 11-6, 29-5
algebra, linear, 28-5
amax, 11-25, 29-6
amean, 11-25, 29-8
AmericanBinomCall, 29-10
AmericanBinomCall_Greeks, 29-11
AmericanBinomCall_ImpVol, 29-13
AmericanBinomPut, 29-14
AmericanBinomPut_Greeks, 29-15
AmericanBinomPut_ImpVol, 29-17
AmericanBSCall, 29-18
AmericanBSCall_Greeks, 29-19
AmericanBSCall_ImpVol, 29-20
AmericanBSPut, 29-21

AmericanBSPut_Greeks, 29-22
AmericanBSPut_ImpVol, 29-23
amin, 11-25, 29-24
ampersand, 7-17
amult, 11-23, 29-26
and, 7-13, 7-14
.and, 7-15
annualTradingDays, 29-28
append, ATOG command, 24-3
arccos, 29-29
arcsin, 29-30
areshape, 11-2, 29-31
arguments, 6-40, 8-3, 8-7
array indexing, 10-3
arrayalloc, 11-7, 29-32
arrayindex, 29-33
arrayinit, 11-6, 29-34
arrays, 10-1, 11-1, 28-30
arrays of structures, 12-4
arraytomat, 11-28, 29-35
arrows, 21-14, 21-16
ASCII files, 24-1
ASCII files, packed, 24-8
ASCII files, reading, 17-3
ASCII files, writing, 17-4
asciiload, 29-36
asclabel, 29-37
assigning to arrays, 11-8
assignment operator, 6-2, 6-39, 7-15
astd, 29-38
astds, 29-40
asum, 29-42
atan, 29-44
atan2, 29-45
atog, 17-3
ATOG, 24-1
atranspose, 11-21, 29-46

autocompletion, 3-12
 autoindenting, 3-12
 autoloader, 6-4, 6-5, 15-1, 29-509
 autoreload, 3-20
 auxiliary output, 17-4, 29-605
 auxiliary output, width, 29-608
 axes, 21-17, 21-19
 axes numbering, 21-26
 axes, reversed, 29-978, 29-981
axmargin, 29-49

B

backslash, 6-22
balance, 29-50
band, 29-51
bandchol, 29-52
bandcholsol, 29-53
bandltsol, 29-55
bandrv, 29-56
bandsolpd, 29-58
 bar shading, 21-17
 bar width, 21-18
bar, 29-58
base10, 29-60
 batch mode, 5-1
begwind, 29-61
besselj, 29-61
bessely, 29-62
 beta function, 29-68
beta, 29-63
 binary file, loading, 29-381
 binary files, 17-15
 bivariate Normal, 29-72
 blank lines, 6-38
 Boolean operators, 7-13
 box, 21-18
box, 29-64

boxcox, 29-65
 branching, 28-44
break, 29-66
 breakpoints, 3-22
browse, 5-5

C

call, 29-67
 calling a procedure, 8-6
 caret, 7-6, 7-19
 Cartesian coordinates, 29-979
 case, 6-38, 29-541, 29-940
 Cauchy, 29-78, 29-614
cdBbeta, 29-68
cdfBetaInv, 29-70
 commandnamecdfBinomial, 29-70
 commandnamecdfBinomialInv, 29-71
cdfBvn, 29-72
cdfBvn2, 29-74
cdfBvn2e, 29-76
cdfCauchy, 29-78
cdfCauchyInv, 29-78
cdfChic, 29-79
cdfChii, 29-80
cdfChinc, 29-81
 commandnamecdfChincInv, 29-83
cdfExp, 29-83
cdfExpInv, 29-84
cdfFc, 29-85
cdfFnc, 29-87
 commandnamecdfFncInv, 29-88
cdfGam, 29-89
cdfGenPareto, 29-91
cdfLaplace, 29-91
cdfLaplaceInv, 29-92
cdfLogistic, 29-93
cdfLogisticInv, 29-94

`cdfm.src`, 29-96, 29-97, 29-98, 29-100, 29-102, 29-104
cdfMvn, 29-94
cdfMvn2e, 29-97
cdfMvnce, 29-95
cdfMvne, 29-96
cdfMvt2e, 29-103
cdfMvtce, 29-99
cdfMvte, 29-101
cdfN, 29-105
cdfN2, 29-108
cdfNc, 29-105
`commandnamecdfNegBinomial`, 29-107
`commandnamecdfNegBinomialInv`, 29-108
cdfNi, 29-110
`commandnamecdfPoisson`, 29-110
`commandnamecdfPoissonInv`, 29-111
cdfRayleigh, 29-112
cdfRayleighInv, 29-113
cdfTc, 29-113
cdfTci, 29-115
cdfTnc, 29-116
cdfTvn, 29-117
cdfWeibull, 29-118
cdfWeibullInv, 29-119
cdir, 29-120
ceil, 29-120
change font, 3-3
change working directory, 3-3
ChangeDir, 29-121
characteristic polynomial, 29-623
chdir, 29-122
chi-square, 29-79
chi-square, noncentral, 29-81
chiBarSquare, 29-122
chol, 29-124
choldn, 29-125

Cholesky decomposition, 0-1, 7-5, 29-124, 29-810
cholsol, 29-126
cholup, 29-127
chrs, 29-128
circles, 21-22
clear breakpoints, 3-21
clear working directory history, 3-3
clear, 29-129
clearg, 29-130
close, 3-10
close all, 3-10
close, 29-130
closeall, 29-132
cls, 29-134
code (dataloop), 29-137
code folding, 3-12
code, 29-134
coefficient of determination, 29-584, 29-589
coefficients, 29-583, 29-589
coefficients, standardized, 29-583, 29-589
colon, 6-39
color, 21-19, 21-25
Colors, 0-1
colors, 0-1
cols, 29-138
colsf, 29-139
columns in a matrix, 29-138
combinate, 29-139
combined, 29-140
comlog, 29-142
comma, 7-16
command, 6-2
command history toolbar, 3-5
command history window, 3-7
command input window, 3-8, 3-16
command line, 5-1

-
- command line editing, 3-8, 5-2
 - command line history, 3-8, 5-2
 - command page, 3-2, 4-3
 - command page toolbar, 3-4
 - comments, 6-38
 - comparison functions, 29-299, 29-300
 - comparison operator, 6-40
 - compilation phase, 19-3
 - compile**, 16-1
 - compile time, 6-1
 - compile**, 29-143
 - compiled language, 6-1
 - compiler, 16-1
 - compiler directives, 28-42
 - compiling, 28-48
 - compiling files, 16-2
 - compiling programs, 16-2
 - complex constants, 6-14, 29-194, 29-503, 29-862
 - complex modulus, 29-1
 - complex**, 24-4, 29-144
 - components and usage, 3-21
 - con**, 29-145
 - concatenation, matrix, 7-8, 7-9
 - concatenation, string, 7-17
 - cond**, 29-148
 - condition number, 29-148
 - conditional branching, 6-34
 - config**, 5-5
 - conformability, 7-1
 - conj**, 29-149
 - cons**, 29-150
 - ConScore**, 29-150
 - constants, complex, 6-14, 29-194, 29-503, 29-862
 - continue**, 29-154
 - contour levels, 21-22
 - contour**, 29-155
 - control flow, 6-31
 - control structures, 12-22
 - conv**, 29-156
 - conversion, character to ASCII value, 29-945
 - conversion, float to ASCII, 29-336, 29-337
 - conversion, string to floating point, 29-862
 - convertsatostr**, 29-157
 - convertstrtosa**, 29-157
 - convolution, 29-156
 - coordinates, 21-6
 - copy, 3-3, 3-4
 - correlation matrix, 29-158, 29-159, 29-584, 29-589
 - corrmm**, 29-158
 - corrms**, 29-159
 - corrvc**, 29-158
 - corrxx**, 29-158
 - corrxxs**, 29-159
 - cos**, 29-159
 - cosh**, 29-160
 - cosine, inverse, 29-29
 - counts**, 29-161
 - countwts**, 29-163
 - create**, 29-164
 - cropping, 21-19
 - cross-product, 29-170, 29-568
 - crossprd**, 29-170
 - Crout decomposition, 29-171, 29-172
 - Crout LU decomposition, 0-1
 - crout**, 29-171
 - croutp**, 29-172
 - csrcol**, 29-174
 - csrlin**, 29-174
 - cumprodc**, 29-175
 - cumsumc**, 29-176
 - cumulative distribution function, 29-68
-

cumulative products, 29-175
cumulative sums, 29-176
cursor, 29-174, 29-534
curve, 29-177
cut, 3-3, 3-4
cvtos, 29-178

D

data coding, 28-38
data handling, 28-33
data loop, 19-1
data page, 3-16
data sets, 17-7, 28-36
data transformations, 19-1, 29-134, 29-201
data, writing, 29-965
datacreate, 29-179
datacreatecomplex, 29-181
datalist, 29-183
dataload, 29-184
dataloop translator, 5-6
dataloop, 29-185
dataopen, 29-185
datasave, 29-187
date, 21-20, 29-188
date, 23-2, 29-188
datestr, 29-189
datestring, 29-189
datestrymd, 29-190
dayinyr, 29-191
dayofweek, 29-191
debug, 3-4
debug button, 3-6
debug page, 3-20
debug, 29-192
debugger, 3-22
debugging, 5-7, 16-3, 28-50, 29-511
declare, 29-193

delete (dataloop), 29-200
delete, 29-198
DeleteFile, 29-200
deletion, 29-229, 29-230, 29-569, 29-612
delif, 29-201
delimited, 24-1
delimited files, 17-3
delimited, hard, 24-6
delimited, soft, 24-5
denseToSp, 29-202
denseToSpRE, 29-203
denToZero, 29-204
derivatives, 29-404
derivatives, second partial, 29-425
descriptive statistics, 29-228, 29-230
design matrix, 29-205
design, 29-205
det, 29-206
determinant, 29-206
detl, 29-207
dffft, 29-208
dfffti, 29-209
diag, 29-209
diagonal, 29-209
diagrv, 29-210
differentiation, 28-3
digamma, 29-211
dimension index, 10-2
dimension number, 10-2
directory, 29-120
division, 7-5
dlibrary, 18-1, 29-212
dllcall, 18-1, 29-213
do loop, 6-32
do until, 29-215
do while, 29-215
dos, 29-218

doswin, 29-220
DOSWinCloseall, 29-220
DOSWinOpen, 29-221
 dot relational operator, 7-11, 7-21
dotmtfeq, 29-223
dotmtfeqmt, 29-224
dotfge, 29-223
dotfgemt, 29-224
dotfgt, 29-223
dotfgtmt, 29-224
dotfle, 29-223
dotflemt, 29-224
dotflt, 29-223
dotflmt, 29-224
dotfne, 29-223
dotfnemt, 29-224
draw, 29-226
drop (dataloop), 29-227
DS structure, 12-15, 13-7
dsCreate, 29-228
dstat, 29-228
dstatmt, 29-230
dstatmtControlCreate, 29-232
dtdate, 29-233
dtday, 29-233
dttime, 29-234
dttodtv, 29-235
dttostr, 29-236
dttoutc, 29-238
 dtv vector, 23-3
dtvnormal, 23-3, 29-238
dtvtodt, 29-239
dtvtoutc, 29-240
 dummy variables, 29-242
dummy, 29-241
dummybr, 29-243
dummydn, 29-245

Durbin-Watson statistic, 29-583, 29-587
 dynamic libraries, 18-3

E

E×E conformable, 7-1
ed, 29-246
 edit, 3-4
 edit button, 3-6
 edit symbol, 3-16
edit, 29-247
 editor, 29-247
 editor properties, 3-15
 editor, alternate, 29-246
eig, 29-249
 eigenvalues, 28-9, 29-249
 eigenvalues and eigenvectors, 29-252
eigh, 29-250
eighv, 29-251
eigv, 29-252
elapsedTradingDays, 29-254
 element-by-element conformability, 7-1, 10-5
 element-by-element operators, 7-1
else, 29-431
elseif, 29-431
 empty matrix, 6-15, 29-138, 29-504, 29-525, 29-772, 29-784
 end of file, 29-258
end, 29-254
endp, 8-2, 8-5, 29-255
endwind, 29-256
envget, 29-257
 environment, search, 29-257
eof, 29-258
eq, 7-10
.eq, 7-12
eqSolve, 29-259

eqSolvemt, 29-263
eqSolvemtControlCreate, 29-267
eqSolvemtOutCreate, 29-268
eqSolveSet, 29-269
eqv, 7-14, 7-15
.eqv, 7-15
erf, 29-269
erfc, 29-269
erfccplx, 29-271
ervCInv, 29-248
erfcplx, 29-271
ervInv, 29-248
error bar, 21-20
error code, 29-271, 29-784
error function, 29-269
error handling, 28-50
error messages, 25-1, 29-273, 29-511
error output window, 3-9, 3-16
error trapping, 29-924
error, 29-271
errorlog, 29-272
errorlogat, 29-273
escape character, 6-22
etdays, 29-273
ethsec, 29-274
etstr, 23-5, 29-275
EuropeanBinomCall, 29-276
EuropeanBinomCall_Greeks, 29-277
EuropeanBinomCall_ImpVol, 29-279
EuropeanBinomPut, 29-280
EuropeanBinomPut_Greeks, 29-281
EuropeanBinomPut_ImpVol, 29-283
EuropeanBSCall, 29-284
EuropeanBSCall_Greeks, 29-285
EuropeanBSCall_ImpVol, 29-286
EuropeanBSPut, 29-287
EuropeanBSPut_Greeks, 29-288

EuropeanBSPut_ImpVol, 29-289
exctsmpl, 29-290
exec, 29-291
execbg, 29-292
executable code, 6-4
executable statement, 6-3
execution phase, 19-4
execution time, 6-1
exit, 3-3
exp, 29-293
exponential, 29-83, 29-84, 29-615
exponential function, 29-293
exponentiation, 7-6
export files, graphics editor, 22-16
expression, 6-1
expression, evaluation order, 6-30
expression, scalar, 6-32
extern (dataloop), 29-294
external, 29-295
extraneous spaces, 6-38
eye, 29-297

F

F distribution, 29-85, 29-87
factorial, 7-6
FALSE, 6-32
fcheckerr, 29-297
fclearerr, 29-298
feq, 29-299
feqmt, 29-300
fflush, 29-302
fft, 29-302
fft, 29-302
ffti, 29-303
fftm, 29-304
fftmi, 29-307
fftn, 29-309

fge, 29-299
fgemt, 29-300
fgets, 29-311
fgetsa, 29-312
fgetsat, 29-312
fgetst, 29-313
fgt, 29-299
fgtmt, 29-300
file formats, 17-14
file handle, 29-167, 29-598
file management, graphics editor, 22-16
fileinfo, 29-314
files, 17-3
files, binary, 17-15
files, matrix, 17-13
files, string, 17-16
filesa, 29-315
finance functions, 28-23
find and replace, 3-14
fle, 29-299
flemt, 29-300
floor, 29-316
flow control, 6-31
flt, 29-299
fltmt, 29-300
fmod, 29-317
fn, 29-318
fne, 29-299
fnemt, 29-300
fonts, 0-1, 29-319
fonts, 29-318
fopen, 29-319
for, 29-321
Foreign Language Interface, 18-1
format, 29-323
formatcv, 29-330
formatnv, 29-331

forward reference, 15-2
Fourier transform, 29-302
Fourier transform, discrete, 29-208, 29-209
fourier transforms, 28-10
fputs, 29-332
fputst, 29-333
fseek, 29-333
fstrerror, 29-335
ftell, 29-336
ftocv, 29-336
ftos, 29-337
ftostrC, 29-341
function, 6-37, 29-477, 29-646
functions, 28-46
fuzzy conditional functions, 28-12

G

gamma function, 29-342
gamma, 29-342
gamma, incomplete, 29-89
gamma, log, 29-519
gammacplx, 29-343
gammair, 29-344
GAUSS Data Archives, 17-11, 17-24, 28-35
Gauss-Legendre quadrature, 29-458
gausset, 27-6, 29-344
gdaAppend, 29-345
gdaCreate, 29-346
gdaDStat, 29-347
gdaDStatMat, 29-349
gdaGetIndex, 29-352
gdaGetName, 29-353
gdaGetNames, 29-354
gdaGetOrders, 29-354
gdaGetType, 29-355
gdaGetTypes, 29-356
gdaGetVarInfo, 29-357

gdaIsCplx, 29-359
gdaLoad, 29-359
gdaPack, 29-362
gdaRead, 29-363
gdaReadByIndex, 29-364
gdaReadSome, 29-365
gdaReadSparse, 29-366
gdaReadStruct, 29-367
gdaReportVarInfo, 29-368
gdaSave, 29-370
gdaUpdate, 29-372
gdaUpdateAndPack, 29-373
gdaVars, 29-374
gdaWrite, 29-375
gdaWrite32, 29-376
gdaWriteSome, 29-377
ge, 7-11
 .ge, 7-12
generalized inverse, 29-469, 29-621, 29-622
Generalized Pareto, 29-91, 29-616
getarray, 29-380
getArray, 11-12
getdims, 29-380
getDims, 11-27
getf, 29-381
getmatrix, 29-382
getMatrix, 11-13
getmatrix4D, 29-383
getMatrix4D, 11-13
getname, 29-384
getnamef, 29-385
getNextTradingDay, 29-386
getNextWeekDay, 29-387
getnr, 29-387
getnrmt, 29-388
getOrders, 11-27
getorders, 29-389
getpath, 29-390
getPreviousTradingDay, 29-390
getPreviousWeekDay, 29-391
getRow, 29-391
getScalar3D, 11-14
getscalar3D, 29-392
getScalar4D, 11-14
getscalar4D, 29-393
getTrRow, 29-394
getwind, 29-394
global control variables, 27-5
global variable, 8-3
go, 3-20
Goertzel algorithm, 29-208
gosub, 29-395
goto help, 3-3
goto, 29-398
gradcplx, 29-404
gradient, 29-404
gradMT, 29-399
gradMTm, 29-400
gradMTT, 29-401
gradMTTm, 29-403
gradp, 29-404
graphic panels, 21-7
graphic panels, nontransparent, 21-8
graphic panels, overlapping, 21-7
graphic panels, tiled, 21-7
graphic panels, transparent, 21-8
graphical objects, graphics editor, 22-11
graphics editor, 22-1
graphics, publication quality, 21-1
graphprt, 29-405
graphset, 29-408
grid, 21-21
grid subdivisions, 21-21
gt, 7-11

.gt, 7-12

H

hard delimited, 24-6

hasimag, 29-408

hat operator, 7-6, 7-19

header, 29-410

headermt, 29-410

help facility, 29-511

help hot keys, 3-25

help page, 3-25

help, F1, 4-4

hermitian matrix, 29-251

hess, 29-411

hesscplx, 29-425

Hessian, 29-425

hessMT, 29-413

hessMTg, 29-414

hessMTgw, 29-415

hessMTm, 29-416

hessMTmw, 29-418

hessMTT, 29-419

hessMTTg, 29-420

hessMTTgw, 29-421

hessMTTm, 29-423

hessMTw, 29-424

hessp, 29-425

hidden lines, 21-27

hist, 29-427

histf, 29-428

histogram, 29-427, 29-428

histp, 29-429

horizontal direct product, 7-7

hot keys, 4-2

hot keys, programming editor, 3-12

hsec, 29-430

html, 3-21

hyperbolic cosine, 29-160

hyperbolic sine, 29-808

hyperbolic tangent, 29-910

I

if, 29-431

imag, 29-432

imaginary matrix, 29-432

inch coordinates, 21-6

#include, 29-433

incomplete beta function, 29-68

incomplete gamma function, 29-89

indcv, 29-434

indefinite, 6-28

index variables, 29-597

indexcat, 29-435

indexing matrices, 6-40, 7-16

indexing procedures, 7-17

indexing, array, 10-3

indexing, structure, 12-5

indices, 29-437

indices2, 29-438

indicesf, 29-439

indicesfn, 29-440

indnv, 29-441

indsav, 29-442

infinity, 6-28

initialize, 8-4

initializing arrays, 11-1

inner product, 7-5

input, ATOG command, 24-4

input, console, 29-145

input, keyboard, 29-145

installation, 2-1

installation, UNIX/Linux, 2-1

installation, Windows, 2-2

instruction pointer, 6-3

Index

integration, 28-3, 28-4, 29-447, 29-450,
29-452, 29-455, 29-458, 29-466
interactive commands, 5-4
interpreter, 6-1
intersection, 29-465
intgrat2, 29-443
intgrat3, 29-445
inthp1, 29-447
inthp2, 29-449
inthp3, 29-452
inthp4, 29-455
inthpControlCreate, 29-458
intquad1, 29-458
intquad2, 29-460
intquad3, 29-461
intrinsic function, 6-8
intrleav, 29-463
intrleavsa, 29-464
intrsect, 29-465
intrsectsa, 29-466
intsimp, 29-466
inv, 29-467
invar, ATOG command, 24-5
inverse cosine, 29-29
inverse sine, 29-30
inverse, generalized, 29-469, 29-621, 29-622
inverse, matrix, 29-467
inverse, sweep, 29-469
invpd, 29-467
invswp, 29-469
iscplx, 29-470
iscplxsf, 29-471
isden, 29-471
isinfnanmiss, 29-472
issmiss, 29-472

J

Jacobian, 29-404

K

keep (dataloop), 29-473
key, 29-474
keyav, 29-476
keyboard input, 29-150
keyboard, reading, 29-474
keyw, 29-476
keyword, 8-1, 8-7
keyword procedure, 29-477
keyword, 29-477
keywords, 28-46
Kronecker, 7-6

L

label, 6-35, 6-39, 8-1, 29-395, 29-398
lag (dataloop), 29-478
lag1, 29-479
lagn, 29-479
lambda, 29-82
lapeighb, 29-480
lapeighi, 29-481
lapeigvb, 29-482
lapeigvi, 29-484
lapgeig, 29-485
lapgeigh, 29-486
lapgeighv, 29-487
lapgeigv, 29-488
lapgschur, 29-497
lapgsvdcst, 29-489
lapgsvds, 29-492
lapgsvdst, 29-494
Laplace, 29-91, 29-92, 29-616
lapsvdcusv, 29-498

-
- lapsvds**, 29-500
 - lapsvdusv**, 29-501
 - layout, 3-6, 3-18
 - layout and usage, 3-10
 - le**, 7-10
 - .le**, 7-12
 - least squares, 7-5
 - least squares regression, 29-580, 29-585
 - left-hand side, 15-2
 - legend, 21-22
 - let**, 29-502
 - lib**, 29-507
 - libraries, 15-1, 28-47
 - libraries, active, 29-509
 - library**, 29-508
 - line numbers, 29-511
 - line thickness, 21-16, 21-20, 21-25
 - line type, 21-25
 - linear algebra, 28-5
 - linear equation, 29-809
 - linear equation solution, 7-5
 - lines, 21-21, 21-22, 21-24
 - #linesoff**, 29-511
 - #lineson**, 29-511
 - linsolve**, 29-512
 - listwise (dataloop)**, 29-513
 - listwise deletion, 29-229, 29-230, 29-569, 29-612
 - literal, 6-23, 7-19
 - ln**, 29-513
 - lncdfbvn**, 29-514
 - lncdfbvn2**, 29-515
 - lncdfmvn**, 29-517
 - lncdfn**, 29-517
 - lncdfn.src, 29-94, 29-109
 - lncdfn2**, 29-518
 - lncdfnc**, 29-519
 - lnfact**, 29-519
 - lngammacplx**, 29-520
 - lnpdfmvn**, 29-521
 - lnpdfmvt**, 29-522
 - lnpdfn**, 29-522
 - lnpdft**, 29-523
 - load**, 29-524
 - loadarray**, 29-529
 - loadd**, 29-531
 - loadf**, 29-524
 - loadk**, 29-524
 - loadm**, 29-524
 - loadp**, 29-524
 - loads**, 29-524
 - loadstruct**, 29-532
 - loadwind**, 29-532
 - local variable declaration, 8-3
 - local variables, 6-8, 8-3, 29-533
 - local**, 8-2, 29-533
 - locate**, 29-534
 - loess**, 29-534
 - loessmt**, 29-535
 - loessmtControlCreate**, 29-536
 - log coordinates, 29-538
 - log factorial, 29-519
 - log gamma, 29-519
 - log**, 29-537
 - log, base 10, 29-537
 - log, natural, 29-513
 - logging commands, 29-142
 - logical operators, 7-13
 - logistic, 29-93, 29-94, 29-617
 - loglog**, 29-538
 - logx**, 29-538
 - logy**, 29-539
 - looping, 6-32, 28-45, 29-215
 - looping with arrays, 11-17
-

loopnextindex, 11-19, 29-540

lower triangular matrix, 29-542

lower, 29-541

lowmat, 29-542

lowmat1, 29-542

lt, 7-10

.lt, 7-11

ltrisol, 29-543

LU decomposition, 7-5, 29-544

lu, 29-544

lusol, 29-545

M

machEpsilon, 29-545

machine epsilon, 29-105, 29-902, 29-907

machine requirements, 2-2

magnification, 21-29

make (dataloop), 29-546

makevars, 29-546

makewind, 29-548

margin, 29-549

matalloc, 29-550

matinit, 29-551

matrices, indexing, 6-40

matrix conformability, 7-1

matrix files, 17-13

matrix manipulation, 28-24

matrix, creation, 29-502

matrix, empty, 6-15, 29-138, 29-504, 29-525,
29-772, 29-784

matrix, ones, 29-595

matrix, zeros, 29-981

mattoarray, 11-28, 29-551

maxbytes, 29-556

maxc, 29-552

maximizing performance, 26-1

maximum element, 29-552

maximum element index, 29-553

maxindc, 29-553

maxv, 29-554

maxvec, 29-555

mbesseli, 29-556

mean, 29-559

meanc, 29-559

median, 29-560

memory, 29-199

memory, clear all, 29-574

menu bar, 3-16

menu, edit, 3-3

menu, file, 3-3, 3-10

menu, help, 3-3

menu, symbol editor, 3-16

menu, tools, 3-3

menu, view, 3-3

menu, window, 3-10, 3-17

menus, 3-3, 3-20

menus, graphics editor, 22-4

mergeby, 29-561

mergevar, 29-562

merging, 28-41

minc, 29-563

minimum element, 29-563

minimum element index, 29-564

minindc, 29-564

minv, 29-565

miss, 29-566

missex, 29-567

missing character, 29-573

missing values, 7-5, 29-229, 29-230, 29-472,
29-566, 29-567, 29-573, 29-612,
29-786

missrv, 29-566

modulo division, 7-5

moment matrix, 29-569, 29-583, 29-588

moment, 29-568
momentd, 29-570
 Moore-Penrose pseudo-inverse, 29-621, 29-622
 movement, command line history, 3-8
movingave, 29-571
movingaveExpwgt, 29-572
movingaveWgt, 29-573
msym, 29-573
msym, ATOG command, 24-10
 multi-threading, 14-1, 28-43
 multiplication, 7-5
 multiplicative sequence, 29-794

N

N-dimensional arrays, 10-1, 11-1, 28-30
 NaN, 6-28
 NaN, testing for, 6-29, 7-9
 navigating, 4-2
ne, 7-11
.ne, 7-12
 new, 3-3, 3-4, 3-18
new, 29-574
nextindex, 29-575
nextn, 29-576
nextnevn, 29-576
nextwind, 29-577
nocheck, 24-10
 Normal distribution, 29-94, 29-95, 29-96, 29-97, 29-99, 29-101, 29-103, 29-105, 29-108, 29-514, 29-517, 29-518, 29-519
 Normal distribution, bivariate, 29-72
not, 7-13, 7-14
.not, 7-15
 null space, 29-578
null, 29-578

null1, 29-579
numCombinations, 29-580

O

obsolete commands, 0-1
ols, 29-580
olsmt, 29-585
olsmtControlCreate, 29-592
olsqr, 29-593
olsqr2, 29-594
olsqrmt, 29-595
ones, 29-595
 open, 3-3, 3-4
open, 29-596
 operators, 6-1, 7-4
 operators, element-by-element, 7-1
 optimization, 28-17
optn, 29-602
optnevn, 29-602
or, 7-13, 7-14
.or, 7-15
orth, 29-604
 orthogonal complement, 29-578
 orthonormal, 29-578, 29-604
 outer product, 7-6
 output, 17-4
 output functions, 28-56
output, 29-604
output, ATOG command, 24-10
outtyp (dataloop), 29-608
outtyp, ATOG command, 24-11
outvar, ATOG command, 24-11
outwidth, 29-608

P

pacf, 29-609

packed ASCII, 24-1, 24-8
packedToSp, 29-610
packr, 29-612
page organization, 3-1
 _pageshf, 21-14
 _pagesiz, 21-14
pairwise deletion, 7-5, 29-229, 29-230,
 29-569
panel data, 11-32
 _parrow, 21-14
 _parrow3, 21-16
parse, 29-613
paste, 3-3, 3-4, 3-5
pause, 29-614
 _paxes, 21-17
 _paxht, 21-17
 _pbartyp, 21-17
 _pbarwid, 21-18
 _pbox, 21-18
 _pboxlim, 21-19
 _pcolor, 21-19
 _pcrop, 21-19
 _pcross, 21-19
 _pdate, 21-20
pdfCauchy, 29-614
pdfexp, 29-615
pdfGenPareto, 29-616
pdfLaplace, 29-616
pdflogistic, 29-617
pdfn, 29-618
pdfRayleigh, 29-619
pdfWeibull, 29-619
 _perrbar, 21-20
 _pframe, 21-20
 _pgrid, 21-21
pi, 29-620
pinv, 29-621
 pinvmt, 29-622
pixel coordinates, 21-6
 _plctrl, 21-21
 _plegctl, 21-22
 _plegstr, 21-22
 _plev, 21-22
 _pline, 21-22
 _pline3d, 21-24
plot coordinates, 21-6
 _plotshf, 21-24
 _plotsiz, 21-25
 _pltype, 21-25
 _plwidth, 21-25
 _pmcolor, 21-25
 _pmsgctl, 21-26
 _pmsgstr, 21-26
 _pnotify, 21-26
 _pnum, 21-26
 _pnumht, 21-27
pointer, 7-17, 8-10, 8-11, 29-533
pointer, instruction, 6-3
pointers, structure, 12-10
polar, 29-623
polychar, 29-623
polyeval, 29-624
polygamma, 29-625
polyint, 29-626
polymake, 29-627
polymat, 29-628
polymroot, 29-628
polymult, 29-630
polynomial, 29-627
 polynomial interpolation, 29-626
 polynomial operations, 28-10
 polynomial regression, 29-628
 polynomial, characteristic, 29-623
 polynomial, evaluation, 29-624

-
- polynomial, roots, 29-631
 - polyroot**, 29-631
 - pop**, 29-631
 - pqgwin**, 29-632
 - precedence, 6-30
 - precision control, 28-22
 - predicted values, 29-594
 - preferences, 3-3, 3-17
 - preservecase**, 24-12
 - previousindex**, 29-633
 - princomp**, 29-634
 - print, 3-3, 3-4
 - print setup, 3-3
 - print**, 29-635
 - printdos**, 29-641
 - printfm**, 29-642
 - printfmt**, 29-645
 - probability density function, Normal, 29-618
 - proc**, 8-2, 29-646
 - procedure, 8-1, 29-533, 29-646
 - procedure, definitions, 6-3, 8-2
 - procedures, 28-46
 - procedures, indexing, 8-10
 - procedures, multiple returns, 8-11
 - procedures, passing to other procedures, 8-9
 - prodc**, 29-647
 - products, 29-648
 - Profiler, 20-1
 - program, 6-4
 - program control, 28-44
 - program space, 29-804
 - program, run, 29-774
 - programming editor, 3-10
 - _protate**, 21-27
 - _pscreen**, 21-27
 - pseudo-inverse, 29-621, 29-622
 - psi**, 29-648
 - _psilent**, 21-27
 - _pstype**, 21-27
 - _psurf**, 21-27
 - _psym**, 21-28
 - _psym3d**, 21-28
 - _psymsiz**, 21-28
 - _ptek**, 21-28
 - _pticout**, 21-28
 - _ptitlht**, 21-28
 - Publication Quality Graphics**, 21-1, 28-57
 - putArray**, 11-15
 - putarray**, 29-649
 - putf**, 29-650
 - putvals**, 29-651
 - PV structure, 12-16, 13-1
 - pvCreate**, 29-653
 - _pversno**, 21-29
 - pvGetIndex**, 29-653
 - pvGetParNames**, 29-654
 - pvGetParVector**, 29-655
 - pvLength**, 29-656
 - pvList**, 29-656
 - pvPack**, 29-657
 - pvPacki**, 29-658
 - pvPackm**, 29-659
 - pvPackmi**, 29-660
 - pvPacks**, 29-662
 - pvPacksi**, 29-663
 - pvPacksm**, 29-664
 - pvPacksmi**, 29-666
 - pvPutParVector**, 29-668
 - pvTest**, 29-670
 - pvUnpack**, 29-670
 - _pxpmax**, 21-29
 - _pxsci**, 21-29
 - _pypmax**, 21-29
 - _pysci**, 21-29
-

_pzclr, 21-29
_pzoom, 21-29
_pzpmax, 21-29
_pzsci, 21-29

Q

QNewton, 29-671
QNewtonmt, 29-674
QNewtonmtControlCreate, 29-678
QNewtonmtOutCreate, 29-679
QNewtonSet, 29-679
QProg, 29-680
QProgmt, 29-681
QProgmtInCreate, 29-684
qqr, 29-684
qqre, 29-686
qqrep, 29-689
QR decomposition, 29-593, 29-595
qr, 29-691
qre, 29-692
qrep, 29-695
qrsol, 29-697
qrtsol, 29-698
qtyr, 29-698
qtyre, 29-701
qtyrep, 29-704
quadrature, 29-458
quantile, 29-706
quantiled, 29-707
qyr, 29-709
qyre, 29-710
qyrep, 29-712

R

radii, 21-22
random numbers, 28-11

rank of a matrix, 29-714
rank, 29-714
rankindx, 29-715
Rayleigh, 29-112, 29-113, 29-619
readr, 29-716
real, 29-717
recent files, 3-3
recent working directories, 3-3
recode (dataloop), 29-720
recode, 29-718
recserar, 29-721
recsercp, 29-723
recserrc, 29-724
recursion, 8-5
redo, 3-3
reduced row echelon form, 29-773
regression, 29-580, 29-585
regular expressions, 3-14
relational operator, dot, 7-11, 7-21
relational operators, 7-9
relative error, 29-105, 29-114
reload, 3-18
reload symbol, 3-16
remove split, 3-10
rerun, 29-725
reserved words, 0-1
reshape, 29-726
residuals, 29-583, 29-587, 29-594
retp, 8-2, 8-5, 29-727
return, 29-728
rev, 29-728
rfft, 29-729
rffti, 29-730
rfftip, 29-731
rfftn, 29-732
rfftnp, 29-733
rfftp, 29-735

right-hand side, 15-2
rndbeta, 29-736
rndcon, 29-737
rndgam, 29-738
rndi, 29-740
rndKmbeta, 29-740
rndKMgam, 29-742
rndKMi, 29-743
rndKMn, 29-745
rndKMnb, 29-746
rndKMp, 29-747
rndKMu, 29-749
rndKMvm, 29-750
rndLCbeta, 29-751
rndLCgam, 29-753
rndLCi, 29-755
rndLCn, 29-757
rndLCnb, 29-758
rndLCp, 29-760
rndLCu, 29-762
rndLCvm, 29-764
rndmult, 29-737
rndn, 29-765
rndnb, 29-766
rndp, 29-767
rndseed, 29-737
rndu, 29-768
rndvm, 29-769
rotater, 29-770
round down, 29-316
round up, 29-121
round, 29-771
rows, 29-771
rowsf, 29-772
rref, 29-773
rules of syntax, 6-37
run, 3-4, 3-5

run button, 3-6
run to cursor, 3-21
run, 29-774
Run-Time Library structures, 13-1

S

satostrC, 29-776
save, 3-10, 3-18
save as, 3-10
save symbol, 3-16
save, 29-776
saveall, 29-778
saved, 29-779
savestruct, 29-780
savewind, 29-781
saving the workspace, 16-2
scalar error code, 29-271, 29-784
scalar expression, 6-32
scale, 29-782
scale3d, 29-783
scalerr, 29-784
scalinfnanmiss, 29-785
scaling, 29-782, 29-783
scalmiss, 29-786
schtoc, 29-787
schur, 29-788
scientific functions, 28-1
screen, 29-789
search next, 3-5
search previous, 3-5
searchsourcepath, 29-790
secondary section, 6-5
seekr, 29-791
select (dataloop), 29-792
selif, 29-792
semicolon, 6-2
seqa, 29-794

seqm, 29-794
sequence function, 29-794
sequence functions, 28-22
series functions, 28-22
set difference function, 29-796
setArray, 11-16
setarray, 29-795
setdif, 29-796
setdifsa, 29-797
setvars, 29-798
setvwrmode, 29-799
setwind, 29-800
shell, 29-800
shiftr, 29-801
shortcuts, 4-2
show, 29-802
Simpson's method, 29-466
sin, 29-805
sine, inverse, 29-30
singleindex, 29-806
singular value decomposition, 29-888,
29-890, 29-892
singular values, 29-887, 29-891
singularity tolerance, 0-1
sinh, 29-808
sleep, 29-809
soft delimited, 24-5
solpd, 29-809
sort data file, 29-812
sort index, 29-815
sort, heap sort, 29-813
sort, multiple columns, 29-816
sort, quicksort, 29-811
sortc, 29-811
sortcc, 29-811
sortd, 29-812
sorthc, 29-813
sorthcc, 29-813
sortind, 29-815
sortindc, 29-815
sorting, 28-41
sortmc, 29-816
sortr, **sortrc**, 29-817
Source Browser, 5-10
source browsing, 4-4
source page, 3-9
spaces, 7-16
spaces, extraneous, 6-38, 7-16, 7-17
sparse matrices, 28-29
spBiconjGradSol, 29-818
spChol, 29-820
spConjGradSol, 29-821
spCreate, 29-822
spDenseSubmat, 29-824
spDiagRvMat, 29-825
spEigv, 29-827
spEye, 29-829
spGetNZE, 29-829
spLDL, 29-832
spline, 29-831
split horizontally, 3-10, 3-17
split vertically, 3-10, 3-17
spLU, 29-833
spNumNZE, 29-835
spOnes, 29-836
SpreadsheetReadM, 29-837
SpreadsheetReadSA, 29-837
spreadsheets, 28-33
SpreadsheetWrite, 29-838
spScale, 29-839
spSubmat, 29-840
spToDense, 29-841
spTrTDense, 29-842
spTScalar, 29-842

- spZeros**, 29-843
- sqpSolve**, 29-844
- sqpSolveMT**, 29-849
- sqpSolveMTControl structure**, 12-25
- sqpSolveMTControlCreate**, 29-856
- sqpSolveMTlagrangeCreate**, 29-857
- sqpSolveMToutCreate**, 29-858
- sqpSolveSet**, 29-858
- sqrt**, 29-858
- square root, 29-858
- src_path**, 15-1
- standard deviation, 29-38, 29-40, 29-229, 29-231, 29-859, 29-860
- standard deviation of residual, 29-583, 29-589
- standard errors, 29-583, 29-589
- statement, 6-2, 6-37
- statement, executable, 6-3
- statement, nonexecutable, 6-3
- statistical distributions, 28-18
- statistical functions, 28-14
- statistics, descriptive, 29-228, 29-230
- status bar, graphics editor, 22-3
- stdc**, 29-859
- stdsc**, 29-860
- step into, 3-21
- step out, 3-21
- step over, 3-21
- stepping through, 3-23
- Stirling's formula, 29-520
- stocv**, 29-861
- stof**, 29-862
- stop, 3-20
- stop program, 3-4
- stop**, 29-862
- strcombine**, 29-863
- strindx**, 29-864
- string array concatenation, 7-18
- string arrays, 6-24, 6-25
- string concatenation, 7-17
- string files, 17-16
- string handling, 28-51
- string index, 29-864, 29-866
- string length, 29-865
- string, long, 6-38
- string, substring, 29-867
- strings, graphics, 21-26
- strlen**, 29-865
- strput**, 29-865
- strrindx**, 29-866
- strsect**, 29-867
- strsplit**, 29-868
- strsplitPad**, 29-869
- strtodt**, 29-871
- strtof**, 29-872
- strtofcplx**, 29-873
- strtriml**, 29-873
- strtrimr**, 29-874
- strtrunc**, 29-874
- strtruncl**, 29-875
- strtruncpad**, 29-875
- strtruncr**, 29-876
- struct editor, 3-19
- structure definition, 12-1
- structure indexing, 12-5
- structure instance, 12-2
- structure pointers, 12-10
- structure, **DS**, 12-15, 13-7
- structure, **PV**, 12-16, 13-1
- structures, 3-19, 12-1, 28-32
- structures, arrays of, 12-4
- structures, control, 12-22
- submat**, 29-876

Index

submatrix, 29-876
subroutine, 6-36, 29-395
subroutines, 28-46
subsample, 29-290
subscat, 29-877
substitution, 7-19
substring, 29-867
substute, 29-879
subvec, 29-880
sum, 29-882
sumc, 29-881
sumr, 29-883
surface, 29-885
svd, 29-887
svd1, 29-888
svd2, 29-889
svdcusv, 29-890
svds, 29-891
svdusv, 29-892
sweep inverse, 29-469
symbol editor, 3-20
symbol names, 6-39
symbol table, 29-803
symbol table type, 29-930
symbols, allocate maximum number, 29-574
syntax, 6-37
syntax highlighting, 3-12
sysstate, 29-893
system, 29-908

T

t distribution, Student's, 29-113
tab, 29-908
table, 7-6
tan, 29-909
tanh, 29-910
tempname, 29-911

tensor, 7-6
text files, 28-34
TGAUSS, 5-1
thickness, line, 21-16, 21-20, 21-25
ThreadBegin, 29-911
ThreadEnd, 29-912
ThreadJoin, 29-913
threads, 14-1, 28-43
ThreadStat, 29-914
tick marks, 21-28
tilde, 7-9
time and date functions, 28-53
time, 23-2, 29-914
time, elapsed, 29-274
timed iterations, 23-6
timedt, 29-915
timestr, 29-915
timeutc, 29-916
timing functions, 29-430
title, 29-917
tkf2eps, 29-917
tkf2ps, 29-918
tocart, 29-919
todaydt, 29-919
Toeplitz matrix, 29-920
toeplitz, 29-920
toggle auto-reload, 3-17
toggle breakpoint, 3-21
token, 29-921
toolbar, 3-18
toolbar, graphics editor, 22-2
toolbars, 3-3, 3-20
tooltips, 3-12
topolar, 29-922
trace program execution, 29-922
trace, 29-922
translation phase, 19-3

transpose, 7-8
 transpose, bookkeeping, 7-8
 trap flag, 29-924, 29-926
 trap state, 29-784
trap, 29-924
trapchk, 29-926
 triangular matrix, lower, 29-542
 triangular matrix, upper, 29-939
trigamma, 29-928
trimr, 29-928
 trivariate Normal, 29-117
 troubleshooting, libraries, 15-12
 TRUE, 6-32, 7-10
trunc, 29-929
 truncating, 29-929
type, 29-930
typecv, 29-931
typef, 29-932

U _____

unconditional branching, 6-35
 underdetermined, 29-583, 29-589
 undo, 3-3
union, 29-933
unionsa, 29-934
uniqindx, 29-935
uniqindxsa, 29-936
unique, 29-937
uniquesa, 29-938
until, 29-215
upmat, 29-939
upmat1, 29-939
 upper triangular matrix, 29-939
upper, 29-940
use, 29-940
 user-defined function, 29-477, 29-646
utctodt, 29-942

utctodtv, 29-943
utrisol, 29-944

V _____

vals, 29-945
varget, 29-946
vargetl, 29-947
 variable names, 29-384, 29-385
 variables, debugging, 3-23, 3-24
 variables, editing, 3-23
 variables, viewing, 3-23
 variance, 29-229, 29-231
 variance-covariance matrix, 29-583, 29-589, 29-953
 varindxi, 29-597
varmall, 29-948
varmares, 29-949
varput, 29-949
varputl, 29-951
vartypef, 29-952
vcm, 29-953
vcms, 29-953
vcx, 29-953
vcxs, 29-953
vec, **vecr**, 29-954
vech, 29-955
vector (dataloop), 29-956
 vectors, 6-40
vget, 29-957
view, 29-957
 viewing graphics, 5-2
 viewing program output, 4-3
viewxyz, 29-958
vlist, 29-959
vnamecv, 29-959
volume, 29-960
vput, 29-960

Index

vread, 29-961
vtypecv, 29-962

W

wait, 29-962
waitc, 29-962
walkindex, 29-963
watch window, 3-24
Weibull, 29-118, 29-119, 29-619
weighted count, 29-163
while, 29-215
window, 17-4
window, 29-964
window, clear, 29-134
workbox, 29-958, 29-960
working directory toolbar, 3-4
workspace, 29-199, 29-804
writer, 29-965

X

xlabel, 29-966
xlsGetSheetCount, 29-967
xlsGetSheetSize, 29-968
xlsGetSheetTypes, 29-968
xlsMakeRange, 29-969
xlsReadM, 29-970
xlsReadSA, 29-971
xlsWrite, 29-973
xlsWriteM, 29-974
xlsWriteSA, 29-975
xor, 7-14
.xor, 7-15
xpnd, 29-977
xtics, 29-978
xy, 29-979
xyz, 29-979

Y

ylabel, 29-980
ytics, 29-980

Z

zeros, 29-981
zeta, 29-982
zlabel, 29-982
zooming graphs, 21-29
ztics, 29-983